PROSPECTUS **Dated September 24, 2018**



U.S.$20,000,000,000

NOTE ISSUANCE PROGRAMME

Under its U.S.$20,000,000,000 Note Issuance Programme (the "**Programme**"), Bank of Montreal (the "**Bank**" or the "**Issuer**") may from time to time issue Notes (as defined below). This Prospectus supersedes any previous prospectus issued in respect of the Programme. Any Notes (other than Exempt Notes as defined below) issued under the Programme on or after the date of this Prospectus are issued subject to the provisions described herein. This Prospectus does not affect any Notes already in issue. Under its Programme, the Bank may from time to time, subject to compliance with all relevant laws, regulations and directives, issue Notes (the "**Notes**") payable in any currency agreed by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s) (as defined below). Notes to be issued under the Programme may comprise (i) unsubordinated Notes which constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank pursuant to the *Bank Act* (Canada) and will rank *pari passu* with all present or future deposit liabilities of the Bank (except as otherwise prescribed by law and subject to the exercise of bank resolution powers) and without preference amongst themselves ("**Senior Notes**") that are principal protected and (ii) Senior Notes that are not principal protected (the "**Principal at Risk Notes**"). Only Senior Notes will be issued under this Prospectus and all references to "**Notes"** hereunder, unless the context otherwise requires, shall be deemed to be references to "**Senior Notes"** that are principal protected**.** Senior Notes and Principal at Risk Notes that are neither admitted to trading on a regulated market in the European Economic Area nor offered in the European Economic Area in circumstances where a prospectus is so required to be published under the Prospectus Directive (as defined below) (the "**Exempt Notes**") may be issued under the Programme pursuant to other offering documents which have not been approved by the UK Listing Authority, but no Exempt Notes will be issued under this Prospectus. The Notes will have maturities as determined from time to time subject, in the case of specific currencies, to all applicable legal, regulatory and central bank requirements. Subject as set out herein, the maximum aggregate nominal amount of all Notes (including Senior Notes issued under this Prospectus) from time to time outstanding under the Programme shall not exceed U.S.$20,000,000,000 (or its equivalent in other currencies), calculated as described herein.

The Notes will be offered on a continuing basis to one or more of the dealers specified herein (each a "**Dealer**" and together the "**Dealers**", which expression shall include any additional dealer appointed by the Bank under the Programme from time to time, either for a specific issue or on an ongoing basis). Notes may also be issued to third parties other than Dealers. Dealers and such third parties are referred to as "**Purchasers**".

Application has been made to the Financial Conduct Authority (the "**FCA**") in its capacity as competent authority under the *Financial Services and Markets Act 2000* (the "**FSMA**") as UK Listing Authority (the "**UK Listing Authority**") for Notes issued under the Programme during the 12 month period from the date of this Prospectus to be admitted to the official list of the UK Listing Authority (the "**Official List**") and to London Stock Exchange plc (the "**London Stock Exchange**") for such Notes to be admitted to trading on either the London Stock Exchange's Main Market (the "**Market**") or on the London Stock Exchange's Professional Securities Market (the "**PSM**"). References in this Prospectus to Notes being "listed" (and all related references) shall mean that said Notes have been admitted, as appropriate, to trading on the Market or the PSM and have been admitted to the Official List. The Market is a regulated market for the purposes of *Directive 2014/65/EU* (as amended, the "**MiFID II**") (a "**Regulated Market**"). The PSM is not a Regulated Market. An indication as to whether or not the Notes are admitted to the Official List and to trading on the Market or the PSM and notice of the aggregate nominal amount of, interest payable in respect of, the issue price of, and certain other terms and conditions not contained herein which are applicable to, each Tranche (as defined herein) of Notes will be set forth in a final terms supplement (the "**Final Terms**") or in a prospectus specific to such Tranche (the "**Drawdown Prospectus**") as described under "Final Terms or Drawdown Prospectuses" below which, with respect to Notes to be listed on the London Stock Exchange, will be delivered to the London Stock Exchange and the UK Listing Authority and, in the case of a Drawdown Prospectus in respect of such Tranche of Notes will, be approved by the UK Listing Authority on or before the admission to trading of the Notes of such Tranche. In the case of Notes issued under the Programme which are listed on the Official List and admitted to trading on the PSM (the "**PSM Notes**"), references herein to the Final Terms or Drawdown Prospectuses shall, unless the context otherwise requires, be construed as references to the pricing supplement substantially in the form set forth in this Prospectus (the "**Pricing Supplement**") or the listing particulars specific to such Tranche (the "**Drawdown Listing Particulars**"), respectively.

No prospectus is required to be published under the Prospectus Directive (as defined below) in respect of PSM Notes. For the purposes of any PSM Notes issued under the Programme, this document does not constitute a base prospectus within the meaning of the Prospectus Directive and will constitute Listing Particulars (as defined below).

The Prospectus (including any documents incorporated by reference) and copies of Final Terms (i) can be viewed on the website of the National Storage Mechanism at *http://www.morningstar.co.uk/uk/NSM* under "Bank of Montreal" and (ii) will be available at the specified office of the Agent (as defined herein) and for collection free of charge from the head office of the Bank in Toronto, Canada.

The credit ratings of the Programme referred to on page viii of this Prospectus have been assigned by Moody's Canada Inc. (**"Moody's Canada**"), S&P Global Ratings, acting through S&P Global Ratings Canada, a business unit of S&P Global Canada Corp. ("**S&P Canada**") and Fitch Ratings, Inc. ("**Fitch**"). The credit ratings of the Bank's debt referred to on page 133 of this Prospectus have been assigned by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("**Moody's USA**"), Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC ("**S&P USA**"), DBRS Limited ("**DBRS**") and Fitch. None of these rating entities is established in the European Union (the "**EU**") or is registered under Regulation (EC) No 1060/2009, as amended (the "**CRA Regulation**"). See "Important Notices – Credit Rating Agencies".

Amounts payable under the Notes may be calculated by reference to certain reference rates. Any such reference rate may constitute a benchmark for the purpose of Regulation (EU) 2016/1011 (the "Benchmark Regulation"). If any such reference rate does constitute such a benchmark, the Final Terms will indicate whether or not the benchmark is provided by an administrator included in the register of administrators and benchmarks established and maintained by the European Securities and Markets Authority ("ESMA") pursuant to Article 36 (Register of administrators and benchmarks) of the Benchmark Regulation. Transitional provisions in the Benchmark Regulation may have the result that the administrator of a particular benchmark is not required to appear in the register of administrators and benchmarks at the date of the applicable Final Terms. The registration status of any administrator under the Benchmark Regulation is a matter of public record, and save where required by applicable law, the Issuer does not intend to update the Final Terms to reflect any change in the registration status of the administrator.

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms, the Bank will issue Notes that evidence deposit liabilities under the *Bank Act* (Canada) whose Branch of Account for purposes of the *Bank Act* (Canada) is the main branch in Toronto. The Bank may also issue such instruments whose Branch of Account for *Bank Act* (Canada) purposes is the London branch, if specified in the applicable Final Terms. Irrespective of any specified Branch of Account, the Bank is (a) the legal entity that is the issuer of the Notes and (b) the legal entity obligated to repay the Notes. The Bank is the only legal entity that will issue Notes pursuant to the Programme. The determination by the Bank of the Branch of Account for Notes will be based on various considerations, including those relating to (i) the market or jurisdiction into which the Notes are being issued, based on factors including investors' preferences in a specific market or jurisdiction, (ii) specific regulatory requirements, such as a regulator requiring that a branch increase its liquidity through locally sourced funding, or (iii) tax implications that would affect the Bank or investors, such as the imposition of a new tax if an alternative branch was used. A branch of the Bank is not a subsidiary of the Bank or a separate legal entity from the Bank.

Senior Notes that are Bail-inable Notes (as defined below) are subject to conversion in whole or in part – by means of a transaction or series of transactions and in one or more steps – into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates under subsection 39.2(2.3) of the Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act (the "CDIC Act") and to variation or extinguishment in consequence and subject to the application of the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein in respect of the operation of the CDIC Act with respect to the Senior Notes. See discussion included under "Risk Factors – Factors which are material for the purpose of accessing the market risks associated with the Notes issued under the Programme - Risks applicable to Senior Notes and in particular Bail-inable Notes" and Condition 3(b) of the "Terms and Conditions of the Notes". The applicable Final Terms will indicate whether the Senior Notes are Bail-inable Notes. Senior Notes are also potentially subject to resolution powers of authorities outside of Canada in exceptional circumstances. See discussion under "Risk Factors - UK resolution risks applicable to the Notes" and "Risk Factors - *Risks related to the Notes generally* - Notes may be subject to write-off, write down or conversion under the resolution powers of authorities outside of Canada".

See "Risk Factors" for a discussion of risks that should be considered in connection with an investment in Notes which may be offered under the Programme.

Arrangers

BMO CAPITAL MARKETS | **BARCLAYS**

Dealers

BMO CAPITAL MARKETS
BNP PARIBAS
COMMERZBANK
CREDIT SUISSE
HSBC
LLOYDS BANK CORPORATE MARKETS
SOCIÉTÉ GÉNÉRALE CORPORATE & INVESTMENT BANKING
BARCLAYS
CITIGROUP
CRÉDIT AGRICOLE CIB
GOLDMAN SACHS INTERNATIONAL
J.P. MORGAN
MORGAN STANLEY
UBS INVESTMENT BANK

The Notes of each Tranche will either initially be represented by a temporary global note or, if agreed between the Bank and the relevant Purchaser, be represented by a permanent global Note, which, in either case, will be deposited on the issue date thereof with (i) if the temporary global Note is intended to be issued in new global note ("**NGN**") form as specified in the applicable Final Terms, a common safekeeper (the "**Common Safekeeper**") for Euroclear Bank SA/NV ("**Euroclear**") and/or Clearstream Banking S.A. ("**Clearstream, Luxembourg**") and (ii) if the temporary global Note is intended to be issued in classic global note ("**CGN**") form as specified in the applicable Final Terms, a common depositary on behalf of Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg and/or such other clearing system as otherwise agreed, as further described in "Issue Procedures" herein. Beneficial interests in a temporary global Note will be exchangeable for beneficial interests in a permanent global Note on or after the date falling not earlier than 40 days after the relevant issue date upon appropriate certification of beneficial ownership as described herein. Notwithstanding the foregoing, each Series of Senior Notes having an original maturity of one year or less will initially be represented by one or more permanent global Notes deposited as aforesaid.

Notes will be issued in bearer form and, depending on their specified currency, will be accepted for clearance through one or more clearing systems, as specified in the applicable Final Terms. These systems may include, in the case of Notes issued in Europe, Euroclear and Clearstream**,** Luxembourg and/or any other relevant clearing system.

Beneficial interests in a permanent global Note will be exchangeable for security-printed Definitive Notes only in limited circumstances. See "Terms and Conditions of the Notes — Definitive Notes". The Bank may agree with any Purchaser that Notes may be issued in a form not contemplated by the Terms and Conditions of the Notes herein, in which event a supplementary prospectus or Drawdown Prospectus (as defined herein), if appropriate, will be made available which will describe the effect of the agreement reached in relation to such Notes.

IMPORTANT NOTICES

This Prospectus comprises (i) a base prospectus for the purposes of Article 5.4 of the Prospectus Directive (as defined below) and (ii) listing particulars for the purposes of the Listing Rules Instrument 2005 ("**Listing Particulars**"). References to Prospectus herein include the Listing Particulars unless the context otherwise requires. For the avoidance of doubt, a Pricing Supplement forms part of the Listing Particulars and does not form part of the Prospectus.

This document supersedes the prospectus of the Bank dated January 19, 2018, except that Notes issued on or after the date of this document which are to be consolidated and form a single series with Notes issued prior to the date of this document will be subject to the Terms and Conditions of the Notes applicable on the date of issue for the first tranche of Notes of such series. Those Terms and Conditions are incorporated by reference in, and form part of, this document.

The Bank accepts responsibility for the information contained in this Prospectus and the Final Terms for each Tranche of Notes issued under the Programme. To the best of the knowledge of the Bank, having taken all reasonable care to ensure that such is the case, the information contained in this Prospectus is in accordance with the facts and contains no omission likely to affect the import of such information.

This Prospectus is to be read in conjunction with any supplements hereto as may be approved by the UK Listing Authority from time to time and with all documents which are incorporated herein or therein by reference (see "Documents Incorporated by Reference") and, in relation to the final terms of any particular Tranche of Notes, the applicable Final Terms. This Prospectus shall be read and construed on the basis that such documents are so incorporated and form part of this Prospectus.

In the case of Notes which are to be admitted to trading on a Regulated Market or offered to the public in circumstances which require the publication of a prospectus under the Prospectus Directive, the minimum specified denomination shall be €100,000 (or its equivalent in any other currency as at the date of issue of the Notes).

No representation, warranty or undertaking, express or implied, is made and no responsibility is accepted by the Dealers as to the accuracy or completeness of the information contained in this Prospectus or any other information provided by the Bank in connection with the Notes. The Dealers accept no liability in relation to the information contained in this Prospectus or any other information provided by the Bank in connection with this Prospectus or the Notes.

No person has been authorised to give any information or to make any representation not contained in or not consistent with this Prospectus or any other information supplied in connection with the Programme or the Notes and, if given or made, such information or representation must not be relied upon as having been authorised by the Bank or any of the Dealers.

Neither this Prospectus, nor any information incorporated herein by reference nor any other information supplied in connection with the Programme or the Notes is intended to provide the basis of any credit or other evaluation and should not be considered as recommendations by the Bank or any of the Dealers that any recipient of this Prospectus, or any information incorporated herein by reference or any other information supplied in connection with this Prospectus or the Notes, should purchase any of the Notes nor are they intended to provide the basis of any credit or other evaluation. Each investor contemplating purchasing any of the Notes should make its own independent investigation of the financial condition and affairs, and its own appraisal of the creditworthiness, of the Bank. Neither this Prospectus, nor any information incorporated herein by reference nor any other information supplied in connection with this Prospectus or the Notes constitutes an offer or invitation by or on behalf of the Bank or any of the Dealers to any person to purchase any of the Notes.

The delivery of this Prospectus does not at any time imply that the information contained herein concerning the Bank is correct at any time subsequent to the date hereof or that any other information supplied in connection with the Programme or the Notes is correct as of any time subsequent to the date indicated in the document containing the same. The Dealers expressly do not undertake to review the financial condition or affairs of the Bank during the life of the Programme. Each recipient of this Prospectus or any Final Terms shall be taken to have made its own investigation and appraisal of the condition (financial or otherwise) of the Bank.

This Prospectus may not be used for the purpose of an offer or solicitation by anyone in any jurisdiction in which such offer or solicitation is not authorised or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer or solicitation. The distribution of this Prospectus and any Final Terms and the offer or sale of the Notes may be restricted by law in certain jurisdictions. Persons into whose possession this Prospectus, any Notes or any offering material come must inform themselves about, and observe, any such restrictions. This Prospectus does not constitute, and may not be used for or in connection with, an offer to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such an offer or a solicitation by anyone not authorised so to act. In particular, there are restrictions on the distribution of this Prospectus and the offer or sale of the Notes in Canada, the United States, the European Economic Area (the "**EEA**") (including the United Kingdom, Belgium, France, the Republic of Italy and The Netherlands), China, Japan, Hong Kong, Singapore and Taiwan. The Notes have not been and will not be registered under the *United States Securities Act of 1933* (as amended) and include Notes in bearer form that are subject to United States tax law requirements. Subject to certain exceptions, Notes may not be offered, sold or delivered within the United States or to United States persons (see "Subscription and Sale"). The Bank and the Dealers do not represent that this document may be lawfully distributed, or that Notes may be lawfully offered, in compliance with any applicable registration or other requirements in any such jurisdiction, or pursuant to an exemption available thereunder, or assume any responsibility for facilitating any such distribution or offering. In particular, no action has been taken by the Bank, the Arrangers or any Dealer that would permit a public offering of the Notes or distribution of the Prospectus in a jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required. Accordingly, the Notes may not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, and neither this Prospectus nor any advertisements or other offering material may be distributed or published in any jurisdiction, except under circumstances that will result in compliance with any applicable laws and regulations and the Dealers have represented that all offers and sales by them will be made on the same terms.

MIFID II PRODUCT GOVERNANCE / TARGET MARKET

The Final Terms in respect of any Notes (or the Pricing Supplement in the case of PSM Notes) may include a legend entitled "MIFID II PRODUCT GOVERNANCE / TARGET MARKET" which will outline the target market assessment in respect of the Notes and which channels for distribution of the Notes are appropriate. Any person subsequently offering, selling or recommending the Notes (a "distributor") should take into consideration the target market assessment; however, a distributor subject to Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "MiFID II") is responsible for undertaking its own target market assessment in respect of the Notes (by either adopting or refining the target market assessment) and determining appropriate distribution channels.

A determination will be made in relation to each issue about whether, for the purpose of the MiFID Product Governance rules under Commission Delegated Directive (EU) 2017/593 (the "MiFID Product Governance Rules"), any Dealer subscribing for any Notes is a manufacturer in respect of such Notes, but otherwise neither the Arranger nor the Dealers nor any of their respective affiliates will be a manufacturer for the purpose of the MIFID Product Governance Rules.

PRIIPS REGULATION PROHIBITION OF SALES TO EEA RETAIL INVESTORS

If the applicable Final Terms in respect of any Notes includes a legend entitled "PRIIPS REGULATION PROHIBITION OF SALES TO EEA RETAIL INVESTORS", the Notes or PSM Notes, as the case may be, are not intended to be offered, sold or otherwise made available to and should not be offered, sold or otherwise made available to any retail investor in the European Economic Area ("EEA"). For these purposes, a retail investor means a person who is one (or more) of: (i) a retail client as defined in point (11) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; (ii) a customer within the meaning of Directive 2002/92/EC, as amended, where that customer would not qualify as a professional client as defined in point (10) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or (iii) not a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive as defined below. Consequently no key information document required by Regulation (EU) No 1286/2014 (as amended, the "PRIIPs Regulation") for offering or selling the Notes or PSM Notes, as the case may be, or otherwise making them available to retail investors in the EEA has been prepared and therefore offering or selling the Notes or PSM Notes, as the case may be, or otherwise making them available to any retail investor in the EEA may be unlawful under the PRIIPs Regulation.

This Prospectus has been prepared on the basis that any offer of Notes in any Member State of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a "**Relevant Member State**") will be made pursuant to an exemption under the Prospectus Directive, as implemented in that Relevant Member State, from the requirement to publish a prospectus for offers of Notes. Accordingly, any person making or intending to make an offer in that Relevant Member State of Notes which are the subject of an offering contemplated in this Prospectus as completed by Final Terms in relation to the offer of those Notes may only do so in circumstances in which no obligation arises for the Bank or any Dealer to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive, in each case, in relation to such offer. Neither the Bank nor any Dealer has authorised, nor do they authorise, the making of any offer of Notes in circumstances in which an obligation arises for the Bank or any Dealer to publish or supplement a prospectus for such offer.

NOTIFICATION UNDER SECTION 309B(1)(C) OF THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES ACT (CHAPTER 289) OF SINGAPORE (THE "SFA")

Unless otherwise stated in the Final Terms in respect of any Notes (or the Pricing Supplement in the case of PSM Notes), all Notes issued or to be issued under the Programme shall be prescribed capital markets products (as defined in the Securities and Futures (Capital Markets Products) Regulations 2018) and Excluded Investment Products (as defined in MAS Notice SFA 04-N12: Notice on the Sale of Investment Products and MAS Notice FAA-N16: Notice on Recommendations on Investment Products).

THE PURCHASE OF NOTES MAY INVOLVE SUBSTANTIAL RISKS AND MAY BE SUITABLE ONLY FOR INVESTORS WHO HAVE THE KNOWLEDGE AND EXPERIENCE IN FINANCIAL AND BUSINESS MATTERS NECESSARY TO ENABLE THEM TO EVALUATE THE RISKS AND THE MERITS OF AN INVESTMENT IN THE NOTES. PRIOR TO MAKING AN INVESTMENT DECISION, PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS SHOULD CONSIDER CAREFULLY, IN LIGHT OF THEIR OWN FINANCIAL CIRCUMSTANCES AND INVESTMENT OBJECTIVES, (I) ALL THE INFORMATION SET FORTH IN THIS PROSPECTUS AND, IN PARTICULAR, THE CONSIDERATIONS SET FORTH BELOW AND (II) ALL THE INFORMATION SET FORTH IN THE APPLICABLE FINAL TERMS. PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS SHOULD MAKE SUCH ENQUIRIES AS THEY DEEM NECESSARY, INCLUDING (WITHOUT LIMITATION) WITH THEIR OWN FINANCIAL, TAX AND LEGAL ADVISERS, WITHOUT RELYING ON THE BANK OR ANY DEALER.

The Notes may not be suitable for all investors. Each potential investor in the Notes must determine the suitability of that investment in light of its own circumstances. In particular, each potential investor, either on its own or with the help of its financial or other professional advisers, should consider whether it:

(a) has sufficient knowledge and experience to make a meaningful evaluation of the Notes, the merits and risks of investing in the relevant Notes and the information contained or incorporated by reference in this Prospectus, any applicable supplement and any applicable Final Terms;

(b) has access to, and knowledge of, appropriate analytical tools to evaluate, in the context of its particular financial situation, an investment in the relevant Notes and the impact such investment will have on its overall investment portfolio;

(c) has sufficient financial resources and liquidity to bear all of the risks of an investment in the relevant Notes, including Notes with principal or interest payable in one or more currencies, or where the currency for principal or interest payments is different from the potential investor's currency or Bail-inable Notes which will be converted (in whole or in part) into Common Shares of the Bank or an affiliate upon a Bail-in Conversion (as defined in Condition 3(b);

(d) understands thoroughly the terms of the relevant Notes and is familiar with the behaviour of any relevant indices and financial markets; and

(e) is able to evaluate possible scenarios for economic, interest rate and other factors that may affect its investment and its ability to bear the applicable risks.

Notes can be complex financial instruments. Sophisticated institutional investors generally do not purchase complex financial instruments as stand-alone investments. They purchase complex financial instruments as a way to reduce risk or enhance yield with an understood, measured, appropriate addition of risk to their overall portfolios. A potential investor should not invest in Notes which are complex financial instruments unless it has the expertise (either alone or with a financial adviser) to evaluate how the Notes will perform under changing conditions, the resulting effect on the value of the Notes and the impact this investment will have on the potential investor's overall investment portfolio.

The investment activities of certain investors are subject to legal investment laws and regulations, or review or regulation by certain authorities. Each potential investor should consult its legal advisers to determine whether and to what extent (1) Notes are legal investments for it, (2) Notes can be used as collateral for various types of borrowing, (3) Notes can be used as repo-eligible securities, and (4) other restrictions apply to its purchase or pledge of any Notes. Financial institutions should also consult their legal advisers or the appropriate regulators to determine the appropriate treatment of Notes under any applicable risk-based capital guidelines or similar rules.

In this Prospectus, references to "**Cdn.$**" and "**$**" are to Canadian dollars, references to "**U.S.$**" and "**U.S. dollars**" are to United States dollars, references to "**euro**" and "**EUR**" are to the currency of the member states that adopt the single currency in accordance with the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union, as amended, references to "**£**" and "**sterling**" are to United Kingdom pounds sterling, references to "**yen**" are to Japanese yen and references to "**CNY**", "**RMB**" and "**Renminbi**" are to the lawful currency of the People's Republic of China ("**PRC**" or "**China**") which, for the purposes of this Prospectus, excludes the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region of the PRC, the Macau Special Administrative Region of the PRC and Taiwan. References herein to the "**European Economic Area**" or "**EEA**" are to the Member States of the EU together with Iceland, Norway and Liechtenstein.

Certain figures and percentages included in this Prospectus have been subject to rounding adjustments; accordingly, figures shown in the same category presented in different tables may vary slightly and figures shown as totals in certain tables may not be an arithmetic aggregation of the figures which precede them.

For the purposes of this Prospectus, the expression "**Prospectus Directive**" means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU, or superseded) and includes any relevant implementing measure in a relevant Member State of the European Economic Area.

IN CONNECTION WITH THE ISSUE OF ANY TRANCHE OF NOTES, A DEALER OR DEALERS ACTING AS STABILISATION MANAGER(S) (THE "STABILISATION MANAGER(S)") (OR PERSONS ACTING ON BEHALF OF ANY STABILISATION MANAGER(S)) MAY OVER-ALLOT NOTES OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WITH A VIEW TO SUPPORTING THE MARKET PRICE OF THE NOTES AT A LEVEL HIGHER THAN THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL. HOWEVER, STABILISATION MAY NOT NECESSARILY OCCUR. ANY STABILISATION ACTION MAY BEGIN ON OR AFTER THE DATE ON WHICH ADEQUATE PUBLIC DISCLOSURE OF THE TERMS OF THE OFFER OF THE RELEVANT TRANCHE OF NOTES IS MADE AND, IF BEGUN, MAY CEASE AT ANY TIME, BUT IT MUST END NO LATER THAN THE EARLIER OF 30 DAYS AFTER THE ISSUE DATE OF THE RELEVANT TRANCHE OF NOTES AND 60 DAYS AFTER THE DATE OF THE ALLOTMENT OF THE RELEVANT TRANCHE OF NOTES. ANY STABILISATION ACTION OR OVER-ALLOTMENT MUST BE CONDUCTED BY THE RELEVANT STABILISATION MANAGER(S) (OR PERSONS ACTING ON BEHALF OF THE RELEVANT STABILISATION MANAGER(S)) IN ACCORDANCE WITH ALL APPLICABLE LAWS AND RULES.

CREDIT RATING AGENCIES

Senior Notes issued under the Programme are generally rated Aa2/P-1 and A2 (Bail-inable Notes) by Moody's Canada, A+/A-1 and A- (Bail-inable Notes) by S&P Canada and AA-/F1+ and AA- (Bail-inable Notes) by Fitch. A Series (as defined herein) of Notes issued under the Programme may be rated or unrated. Where a Series of Notes is rated, such rating will not necessarily be the same as the ratings assigned to the Programme. **The rating of the Notes is not a recommendation to purchase, hold or sell the Notes, and may be subject to suspension, reduction, revision or withdrawal at any time by the assigning rating agencies. There is no assurance that the rating of the Notes will remain for any given period of time or that the rating will not be lowered or withdrawn by the rating agencies if in their judgment circumstances so warrant. Investors are cautioned to evaluate each rating independently of any other rating.**

The rating of certain Series of Notes to be issued under the Programme may be specified in the applicable Final Terms. In general, European regulated investors are restricted under the CRA Regulation from using credit ratings for regulatory purposes, unless such ratings are issued by a credit rating agency established in the EU and registered under the CRA Regulation (and such registration has not been withdrawn or suspended). Such general restriction will also apply in the case of credit ratings issued by non-EU credit rating agencies, unless the relevant credit ratings are endorsed by an EU-registered credit rating agency or the relevant non-EU credit rating agency is certified in accordance with the CRA Regulation (and such endorsement action or certification, as the case may be, has not been withdrawn or suspended).

In addition to the Programme ratings provided by Moody's Canada, S&P Canada and Fitch, each of Moody's USA, S&P USA, DBRS and Fitch has provided issuer and other ratings and assessments for the Bank as specified under "Bank of Montreal – Issuer Ratings".

None of Moody's Canada, Moody's USA, S&P Canada, S&P USA, Fitch or DBRS is established in the EU. However, ratings issued by Moody's Canada and Moody's USA are endorsed by Moody's Investors Service Ltd., which is established in the EU and registered under the CRA Regulation. Ratings issued by S&P Canada and S&P USA are endorsed by Standard & Poor's Credit Market Services Europe Ltd. which is established in the EU and registered under the CRA Regulation. Ratings issued by Fitch are endorsed by Fitch Ratings Ltd., which is established in the EU and registered under the CRA Regulation. Ratings issued by DBRS are endorsed by DBRS Ratings Limited, which is established in the EU and registered under the CRA Regulation.

The European Securities and Market Association ("**ESMA**") is obliged to maintain on its website a list of credit rating agencies registered in accordance with the CRA Regulation. This list must be updated within 5 working days of ESMA's adoption of any decision to withdraw the registration of a credit rating agency under the CRA Regulation. ESMA's website address is *http://www.esma.europa.eu*. Please note that this website does not form part of the Prospectus. The list of registered and certified rating agencies published by ESMA on its website in accordance with the CRA Regulation is not conclusive evidence of the status of the relevant rating agency included in such list, as there may be delays between certain supervisory measures being taken against a relevant rating agency and the publication of the updated ESMA list.

In accordance with Article 4.1 of the CRA Regulation, please note that the following documents (as defined in the section entitled "Documents Incorporated by Reference") incorporated by reference in this Prospectus contain references to credit ratings:

(a) 2017 MD&A (page 105);

(b) 2017 AIF (pages 8 to 9 and II-1 to II-2); and

(c) Third Quarter 2018 Report to Shareholders (pages 34 to 35).

CAUTION REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The Bank's public communications often include written or oral forward-looking statements. Statements of this type are included in this Prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference, and may be included in other filings with Canadian securities regulators or the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, or in other communications. All such statements are made pursuant to the "safe harbor" provisions of, and are intended to be forward-looking statements under, the United States Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 and any applicable Canadian securities legislation. The forward-looking statements in this Prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference may involve, but are not limited to, comments with respect to the Bank's objectives and priorities for fiscal 2018 and beyond, its strategies or future actions, its targets, expectations for its financial condition or share price, and the results of or outlook for its operations or for the Canadian, United States and international economies. Forward-looking statements are typically identified by words such as "will", "should", "believe", "expect", "anticipate", "intend", "estimate", "plan", "goal", "target", "may" and "could".

By their nature, forward-looking statements require the Bank to make assumptions and are subject to inherent risks and uncertainties, both general and specific in nature. There is significant risk that predictions, forecasts, conclusions or projections will not prove to be accurate, that the Bank's assumptions may not be correct, and that actual results may differ materially from such predictions, forecasts, conclusions or projections. The Bank cautions readers of this document not to place undue reliance on its forward-looking statements as a number of factors – many of which are beyond the Bank's control and the effects of which can be difficult to predict - could cause actual future results, conditions, actions or events to differ materially from the targets, expectations, estimates or intentions expressed in the forward-looking statements.

The future outcomes that relate to forward-looking statements may be influenced by many factors, including but not limited to: general economic and market conditions in the countries in which the Bank operates; weak, volatile or illiquid capital and/or credit markets; interest rate and currency value fluctuations; changes in monetary, fiscal or economic policy and tax legislation and interpretation; the level of competition in the geographic and business areas in which it operates; changes in laws or in supervisory expectations or requirements, including capital, interest rate and liquidity requirements and guidance, and the effect of such changes on funding costs; judicial or regulatory proceedings; the accuracy and completeness of the information the Bank obtains with respect to its customers and counterparties; the Bank's ability to execute its strategic plans and to complete and integrate acquisitions, including obtaining regulatory approvals; critical accounting estimates and the effect of changes to accounting standards, rules and interpretations on these estimates; operational and infrastructure risks; changes to the Bank's credit ratings; political conditions, including changes relating to or affecting economic or trade matters; global capital markets activities; the possible effects on the Bank's business of war or terrorist activities; outbreaks of disease or illness that affect local, national or international economies; natural disasters and disruptions to public infrastructure, such as transportation, communications, power or water supply; technological changes; information and cyber security, including the threat of hacking, identity theft and corporate espionage, as well as the possibility of denial of service resulting from efforts targeted at causing system failure and service disruption; and the Bank's ability to anticipate and effectively manage risks arising from all of the foregoing factors.

The Bank cautions that the foregoing list is not exhaustive of all possible factors. Other factors and risks could adversely affect its results. For more information, please see the Risk Factors starting on page 1 hereof and the discussion in the "Risks That May Affect Future Results" section beginning on page 79 of the 2017 MD&A incorporated herein by reference, the sections related to credit and counterparty, market, insurance, liquidity and funding, operational, model, legal and regulatory, business, strategic, environmental and social, and reputation risk sections starting on page 86 of the 2017 MD&A incorporated herein by reference, the discussion in the Critical Accounting Estimates – Income Taxes and Deferred Tax Assets

section on page 114 of the 2017 MD&A incorporated herein by reference, and the Risk Management section of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A incorporated herein by reference, all of which outline certain key factors and risks that may affect the Bank's future results. Investors and others should carefully consider these factors and risks, as well as other uncertainties and potential events, and the inherent uncertainty of forward-looking statements. The Bank does not undertake to update any forward-looking statements, whether written or oral, that may be made from time to time by the organization or on its behalf, except as required by law. The forward-looking information contained in this document or incorporated by reference in this document is presented for the purpose of assisting the potential Noteholders in understanding the Bank's financial position as at and for the periods ended on the dates presented, as well as the Bank's strategic priorities and objectives, and may not be appropriate for other purposes.

Material economic assumptions underlying the forward-looking statements contained in this document or incorporated by reference in this document are set out in the 2017 MD&A incorporated herein by reference under the heading "Economic Developments and Outlook", as updated by the "Economic Review and Outlook" section set forth in the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A incorporated herein by reference. Assumptions about the performance of the Canadian and United States economies, as well as overall market conditions and their combined effect on the Bank's business, are material factors it considers when determining its strategic priorities, objectives and expectations for its business. In determining the Bank's expectations for economic growth, both broadly and in the financial services sector, the Bank primarily considers historical economic data provided by governments, historical relationships between economic and financial variables, and the risks to the domestic and global economy. See the "Economic Review and Outlook" section of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A incorporated herein by reference.

CONTENTS

	Page
Risk Factors	1
Documents Incorporated by Reference	27
Issue of Notes	29
Final Terms or Drawdown Prospectus	30
Overview of the Programme	31
Issue Procedures	41
Pro Forma Final Terms	43
Form of Pricing Supplement for PSM Notes	61
Terms and Conditions of the Notes	80
Use of Proceeds	125
Bank of Montreal	126
Subscription and Sale	139
Taxation	146
General Information	151

RISK FACTORS

The Bank believes that the following factors may affect its abilities to fulfil its obligations under Notes issued under the Programme because they may, directly or indirectly, adversely affect the Bank's financial results, businesses, financial condition, prospects or liquidity. Most of these factors are contingencies which may or may not occur and the Bank is not in a position to express a view on the likelihood of any such contingency occuring or the likelihood or extent to which any such contingencies may affect the price of the Notes in the secondary market or an investor's ability to sell its Notes in the secondary market or the likelihood or extent to which any such contingencies may affect the ability of the Bank to pay interest, principal or other amounts on or in connection with any Notes.

In addition, factors which could be material for the purpose of assessing the market risks associated with Notes issued under the Programme are also described below.

The Bank believes that the factors described below represent the principal risks inherent in investing in Notes issued under the Programme, but any change in the secondary market value of the Notes, the inability of an investor to sell its Notes in the secondary market or the inability of the Bank to pay interest, principal or other amounts on or in connection with any Notes or to perform any of its obligations may occur for other reasons and the Bank does not represent that the statements below regarding the risks of holding any Notes are exhaustive. Prospective investors should also read the detailed information set out elsewhere in this Prospectus (including the documents incorporated by reference) and reach their own views prior to making any investment decisions.

Factors that are material for the purpose of assessing risks associated with the Bank

Banking and financial services involve a number of risks. Prospective investors should carefully consider the following categories of risks to which the Bank's businesses are exposed. There are numerous factors, many beyond the Bank's control, which could cause the Bank's results to differ significantly from those anticipated. These risks include the following:

1. Credit and counterparty risk is the potential for loss due to the failure of a borrower, endorser, guarantor or counterparty to repay a loan or honour another predetermined financial obligation. Credit and counterparty risk underlies every lending activity that the Bank enters into, and also arises in the holding of investment securities, transactions related to trading and other capital markets products and activities related to securitization. Credit risk is the most significant measurable risk that the Bank faces. Proper management of credit risk is essential to the Bank's success, since the failure to effectively manage credit risk could have an immediate and significant impact on the Bank's earnings, financial condition and reputation.

2. Market risk is the potential for adverse changes in the value of the Bank's assets and liabilities resulting from changes in market variables such as interest rates, foreign exchange rates, equity and commodity prices and their implied volatilities, and credit spreads, and includes the risk of credit migration and default in the Bank's trading book. Market risk arises from the Bank's trading and underwriting activities, as well as its structural banking activities. The magnitude and importance of these activities to the enterprise, along with the potential volatility of market variables, call for diligent governance and a robust market risk management framework to provide effective identification, measurement, reporting and control of market risk exposures.

3. Insurance risk is the potential for loss as a result of actual experience being different from that assumed when an insurance product was designed and priced. It generally entails the inherent unpredictability that can arise from assuming long-term policy liabilities or from the uncertainty of future events. Insurance provides protection against the financial consequences of insured risks by

transferring those risks to the insurer (under specfic terms and conditions) in exchange for premiums. Insurance risk is inherent in all of the Bank's insurance products, including annuities and life, accident and sickness, and creditor insurance, as well as in the Bank's reinsurance business.

4. Liquidity and funding risk is the potential for loss if the Bank is unable to meet financial commitments in a timely manner at reasonable prices as they become due. Financial commitments include liabilities to depositors and suppliers, and lending, investment and pledging commitments.

5. Operational risk is the potential for loss resulting from inadequate or failed internal processes or systems, human interactions or external events, but excludes business risk, credit risk and market risk. Operational risk is inherent in all the Bank's business and banking activities and has the potential to significantly impact the Bank's business and financial results, including financial loss, restatements and damage to the Bank's reputation. Like other financial services organizations operating in multiple jurisdictions, the Bank is exposed to a variety of operational risks that arise from the potential for failures of the Bank's internal processes, employees and systems, as well as from external threats. Potential losses may result from process and control failures, theft and fraud, unauthorized transactions by employees, regulatory non-compliance, business disruption, information security breaches, cyber security threats and exposure related to outsourcing, as well as the risk of damage to physical assets. Given the large volume of transactions the Bank processes on a daily basis, and the complexity and speed of the Bank's business, there is a possibility that certain operational or human errors may be repeated or compounded before they are discovered and rectified. Operational risk is not only inherent in the Bank's business and banking activities, it is inherent in the processes and controls used to manage the Bank's risks. There is the potential for errors to occur, as well as the possibility of failure in the Bank's internal processes or systems, which could lead to financial loss and reputational harm. Shortcomings or failures of the Bank's internal processes, employees or systems, or of services and products provided by third parties, including any of the Bank's financial, accounting or other data processing systems, could lead to financial loss or restatements and damage the Bank's reputation. The nature of the Bank's business also exposes us to the risk of theft and fraud when we enter into credit transactions with customers or counterparties. In extending credit, the Bank relies on information and other representations made by customers and counterparties and that information provided is accurate and complete. While the Bank conducts appropriate due diligence on such customer information and, where practical and economical, engage valuation experts, and other experts or sources of information to assist with assessing collateral and other customer risks, the Bank's financial results may be adversely impacted if the information provided by customers or counterparties is materially misleading and that is not discovered during the due diligence process.

6. Model risk is the potential for adverse consequences following from decisions based on incorrect or misused model results. These adverse consequences can include financial loss, poor business decision-making or damage to reputation.

7. Legal and regulatory risk is the potential for loss or harm created by failing to comply with laws or satisfy contractual obligations or regulatory requirements. This includes the risks of failing to: comply with the law (in letter or in spirit) or maintain standards of care; implement legislative or regulatory requirements; enforce or comply with contractual terms; assert non-contractual rights; effectively manage disputes; or act in a manner so as to maintain the Bank's reputation. The Bank's success relies in part on its ability to prudently manage its exposure to legal and regulatory risk. The financial services industry is highly regulated, and the Bank anticipates intense ongoing scrutiny from its supervisors in the oversight process and strict enforcement of regulatory requirements as governments and regulators around the world continue with reforms intended to strengthen the stability of the financial system. Banks globally continue to be subject to fines and penalties for a number of regulatory and conduct issues.

8. Business risk arises from the specific business activities of an enterprise and the effects these could have on its earnings. Business risk encompasses the potential causes of earnings volatility that are distinct from credit, market or operational risk factors. The management of business risk identifies and addresses factors related to the risk that volumes will decrease or margins will shrink without the enterprise having the ability to compensate for these developments by cutting costs. The Bank faces many risks that are similar to those faced by non-financial firms, principally that the Bank's profitability, and hence value, may be eroded by changes in the business environment or by failures of strategy or execution. Sources of these risks include, but are not limited to, changing client expectations, heightened competition, technology driver changes, adverse business developments and relatively ineffective responses to industry changes. For example, client retention can be influenced by a number of factors, including service levels, prices for products and services, delivery platforms, ease of access to products and services, the quality of the customer experience, the Bank's reputation and the actions of the Bank's competitors.

9. Strategic risk is the potential for loss due to changes in the external business environment and/or failure to properly respond to these changes as a result of inaction, ineffective strategies or poor implementation of strategies. Strategic risk arises from external risks inherent in the business environment within which the Bank operates, as well as the potential for loss if the Bank is unable to address those external risks effectively. While external strategic risks – including economic, geopolitical, regulatory, technological, social and competitive risks – cannot be controlled, the likelihood and magnitude of their impact can be mitigated through an effective strategic risk management framework and certain of these risks, including economic, geo-political and regulatory risks, can be assessed through stress testing.

10. Environmental and social risk is the potential for loss or damage to the Bank's reputation resulting from environmental or social concerns related to the Bank or its customers. Environmental and social risk is often associated with credit, operational and reputation risk. Environmental and social risk covers a broad spectrum of issues, such as climate change, biodiversity, ecosystem health, pollution, waste and the unsustainable use of water and other resources, as well as risk to the livelihoods, health, human rights and cultural heritage of communities.

11. Reputation risk is the potential for loss or harm to the Bank's brand, and may arise even if other risks are managed effectively.

12. Credit and counterparty, market, insurance, liquidity and funding, operational, model legal and regulatory, business, strategic, environmental and social, and reputation risks, as well as other risks that may affect the Bank's future results, are discussed in the Enterprise-Wide Risk Management section beginning on page 78 of the Bank's 2017 MD&A (as defined below).

Industry and non-company factors

Information and Cyber Security Risk

Information security is integral to the Bank's business activities, brand and reputation. Given the Bank's pervasive use of the internet and reliance on advanced digital technologies, the Bank faces common banking information security risks, including the threat of hacking, identity theft and corporate espionage, as well as the possibility of denial of service resulting from efforts targeted at causing system failure and service disruption. The Bank continues to proactively invest in defensive technology, talent and processes to prevent or detect and manage cyber security threats within the Bank and at service providers. These include benchmarking and review of best practices across the banking and cyber security industries, evaluation of the effectiveness of the Bank's key controls and development of new controls, as needed,

with ongoing investments in both technology and human resources. The Bank performs assessments of third-party service providers to monitor alignment with the Bank's standards. The Bank also works with cyber security and software suppliers to bolster its internal resources and technology capabilities in order to better enable the Bank to remain resilient in a rapidly evolving threat landscape.

Geopolitical Risk

Geopolitical risk has increased, largely as a result of escalating tensions between several countries, in particular North Korea and the United States, and strained United States relations with countries such as Russia and China. Heightened geopolitical risk can create uncertainty in global economic investment, potentially leading to market disruptions and a decrease in growth and trade. The Bank's portfolio has limited direct exposure outside North America. However, the Bank's core customers and its international strategy depend on trade and growth.

Canadian Housing Markets

The Canadian housing market has appreciated considerably over the past number of years. The Greater Toronto Area ("**GTA**") had experienced rapid housing price increases until the spring of 2017, at which time price increases moderated following the announcement of the Ontario Fair Housing Plan. While recent resale market results suggest this price adjustment in the GTA is largely complete, Bank of Canada rate hikes announced during the year and future rate hikes and regulatory changes could weigh on sales activity and home prices in this region as well as in the Greater Vancouver Area. In particular, future regulatory changes related to the qualifying rate for all uninsured mortgages could also reduce transactional activity and therefore home prices in these regions. Lower sales activity in these previousy heated markets may impact mortgage origination volumes and, if housing values decline, the collateralization of the Bank's existing portfolio would be reduced. It is not possible to accurately predict the full impact of the recent changes and potential future changes, but robust economic conditions in these regions, including good economic growth, low unemployment and above-average population growth support the expectations for low ongoing delinquency rates for real estate loans. The Bank's prudent lending practices, which include the personal adjudication of higher-value and higher loan-to-value transactions and setting and close monitoring of regional, property type and customer segment concentration limits, support the soundness of the Bank's Canadian real estate lending portfolio. Further, the Bank's stress tests analysis suggests that significant price declines and recessionary economic conditions would result in manageable losses.

Trade Instability

The risk of global trade instability risk stems from political, economic and trade policy uncertainty. Support for protectionism and anti-globalization sentiment in the United States and other countries may impact existing trade agreements, such as the North American Free Trade Agreement ("**NAFTA**"), which is currently under renegotiation, as well as overall global growth. In particular, the outcome of the NAFTA negotiations could result in new rules that could have a significant impact on the Bank's customers in the United States and Canada, resulting in disruptions in cross-border supply chains and trade and investment flows. The Bank benefits from an integrated North American strategy in diverse industries and geographies, with limited direct lending exposure outside of North America and a footprint that minimizes the effects of changes in commodity prices and foreign exchange movements, wherein price declines/ rises often have offsetting impacts across different North American regions and industries. Although it is difficult to successfully predict and mitigate the potential economic and financial consequence of trade-related events that could adversely affect economic growth, the Bank actively monitors global and North American trends and continually assesses its portfolio and business strategies in the context of those developments. The Bank stress tests its portfolios, business plans and capacity adequacy against severely adverse scenarios arising from shocks, and establishes contingency plans and mitigation strategies to react to and offset possible adverse political and/or economic developments.

The Bank's credit exposure by geographic regions provided in Tables 7, 8 and 11 to 13 on pages 128 to 133 of the 2017 MD&A and Note 4 on page 152 of the 2017 Financial Statements (as defined below). Further information on the Bank's direct and indirect European exposures is provided in the European Exposures section on page 92 of the 2017 MD&A and on pages 35 to 36 of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A incorporated herein by reference.

Technology Disruption and Competition

The financial services industry continues to undergo rapid change, as technology enables new non-traditional entrants to compete in certain segments of banking, in some cases with reduced regulatory requirements and oversight. New entrants may leverage new technologies, advanced data and analytical tools, lower cost to serve and/or faster processes to challenge traditional banks, including new business models in retail payments, consumer and commercial lending, foreign exchange and low-cost investment advisory services. Failure to keep pace with these new technologies and competition may potentially impact the Bank's overall revenues and earnings if customers choose the services of these new market entrants. While the Bank closely monitors technology disruptors, the Bank also continues to adapt by increasing its investment in technology and innovation to keep pace with dynamic client expectations. This includes improving its mobile and internet banking capabilities, building new branch formats, and refining the Bank's credit decisioning, analytic and modelling data and tools and, where appropriate, bringing new and enhanced customer solutions to market. The Bank further mitigates this risk by providing its customers with access to banking services across different channels, focusing on improving customer loyalty and trust, enhancing its advanced data and analytical tools, and leveraging current and future partnerships in order to deliver an exceptional customer experience with reduced costs and simplified processes. However, matching the pace of innovation exhibited by new and differently-situated competitors may require the Bank and policy-makers to adapt at a faster pace.

General Economic and Market Conditions in the Countries in which the Bank Conducts Business

The Bank operates in Canada, the United States and a number of other countries and the volume of business the Bank conducts in these geographic regions may have an effect on the Bank's overall revenue and earnings. Factors such as fluctuations in interest rates, foreign exchange rates, consumer saving and spending, housing prices, consumer borrowing and repayment, business investment, and the rate of inflation affect the business and economic environments in which the Bank operates, and may affect the value of the Bank's investments, the credit quality of the Bank's customer and counterparty loans and the funding markets that the Bank accesses.

Regulatory Requirements

The financial services industry is highly regulated, and the Bank has experienced changes and increased complexity in regulatory requirements as governments and regulators around the world continue to pursue major reforms intended to strengthen the stability of the financial system and protect key markets and participants. As a result, there is the potential for higher capital requirements and additional regulatory and compliance costs, which could lower the Bank's returns and affect its growth. These reforms could also affect the cost and availability of funding and the extent of market-making activities. Regulatory reforms may also impact fees and other revenues for certain of the Bank's operating groups. In addition, differences in laws and regulations enacted by various national regulatory authorities may provide advantages to the Bank's international competitors that could affect its ability to compete and result in loss of market share. The Bank monitors such developments, and other potential changes such as reforms of the United States financial regulatory system or the potential impacts of a United Kingdom withdrawal from the EU, so that the Bank is well-positioned to respond to and implement any required changes. Failure to comply with applicable legal and regulatory requirements may result in litigation, financial losses, regulatory sanctions, enforcement actions, an inability to execute the Bank's business strategies, a decline in investor

and customer confidence and harm to the Bank's reputation. The Bank's regulatory requirements risk is further discussed in the Legal and Regulatory Risk and the Enterprise-Wide Capital Management sections on pages 109 and 69, respectively, of the 2017 MD&A and in the Capital Management and Other Regulatory Developments sections on pages 13 and 28, respectively, of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A incorporated herein by reference.

Fiscal and Monetary Policies

The Bank's earnings are affected by fiscal, monetary, regulatory and other economic policies in Canada, the United States and other jurisdictions. Such policies may have the effect of increasing or reducing competition, profitability and uncertainty in businesses and markets, which may affect the Bank's customers and counterparties, potentially contributing to a greater risk of default. Changes in fiscal and monetary policies are difficult to anticipate and predict. Fluctuations in interest rates and exchange rates that result from these changes can have an impact on the Bank's earnings and valuation. Prolonged low interest rates could lead to lower overall profitability in the Bank's retail and commercial businesses. Changes in the value of the Canadian dollar relative to the U.S. dollar could affect the results of the Bank's small business, corporate and commercial clients in Canada. A strengthening of the U.S. dollar could increase the value of the Bank's U.S. dollar-denominated risk weighted assets and capital deductions, lowering the Bank's capital ratios. The Bank may offset foreign exchange movements on its capital ratios, and did so during 2017. A decline in the U.S. dollar would reduce the strength of the Bank's U.S. operations' contribution to its Canadian dollar profitability. Hedging positions may be taken to manage interest rate exposures and partially offset the pre-tax effects of Canadian/ U.S. dollar exchange rate fluctuations on financial results. The Bank's foreign exchange and interest rate risk exposures are discussed in the Foreign Exchange section on page 36, the Enterprise-Wide Capital Management section on page 69 and the Market Risk section on page 94 of the 2017 MD&A, in the Foreign Exchange section on page 8, the Capital Management section on page 13, and the Trading and Underwriting Market Risk section on page 30, of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A and in Note 4 to the Third Quarter 2018 Interim Financial Statements.

Tax Legislation and Interpretations

Changes in tax rates, tax law and policy and its interpretation by taxing authorities can have an impact on the Bank's earnings. Tax laws, as well as the interpretation of tax laws and policy by taxing authorities, may change as a result of efforts by the G20 and the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development to broaden the tax base globally and increase tax related reporting. In addition, a reduction in income tax rates could lower the value of the Bank's deferred tax asset. Income taxes and deferred tax assets are discussed in the Critical Accounting Estimates section on page 113 of the 2017 MD&A and the Other Regulatory Developments section on page 28 of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A.

Acquisitions

The Bank conducts thorough due diligence before completing business or portfolio acquisitions. However, it is possible that the Bank could make an acquisition that subsequently does not perform in line with its financial or strategic objectives or expectations. The Bank's ability to successfully complete an acquisition may be subject to regulatory and shareholder approvals and the Bank may not be able to determine when, if or on what terms the necessary approvals will be granted. Changes in the competitive and economic environment, as well as other factors, may result in lower revenue, while higher than anticipated integration costs and failure to realize expected cost savings after an acquisition could also adversely affect the Bank's earnings. Integration costs may increase as a result of higher regulatory costs related to an acquisition, unanticipated costs that were not identified in the due diligence process or demands on management time that are more significant than anticipated, as well as unexpected delays in implementing certain plans that in turn lead to delays in achieving full integration. Successful post-acquisition performance depends on

retaining the clients and key employees of acquired companies and on integrating key systems and processes without disruption, and there can be no assurance that the Bank will always succeed in doing so.

Critical Accounting Estimates and Accounting Standards

The Bank prepares its consolidated financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards ("**IFRS**") as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board. Changes that the International Accounting Standards Board makes from time to time to these standards can be difficult to anticipate and may materially affect how it records and reports its financial results. Significant accounting policies and future changes in accounting policies are discussed on pages 116 to 117 of the 2017 MD&A, in Note 1 on page 144 of the 2017 Financial Statements, on pages 27 to 28 of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A, and in Note 1 of the Third Quarter 2018 Interim Financial Statements.

The application of IFRS requires management to make significant judgments and estimates, sometimes relying on financial and statistical models, that can affect the dates on which certain assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses are recorded in the Bank's consolidated financial statements as well as their recorded values. In making these judgments and estimates, the Bank relies on the best information available at the time. However, it is possible that circumstances may change, that new information may become available or that the Bank's models may prove to be imprecise.

The Bank's financial results could be affected for the period during which any such new information or change in circumstances became apparent, and the extent of the impact could be significant. More information is included in the discussion of Critical Accounting Estimates on page 113 of the 2017 MD&A and on page 27 of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A.

Factors which are material for the purpose of assessing the market risks associated with Notes issued under the Programme

Risks applicable to Senior Notes and in particular Bail-inable Notes

Senior Notes will be subject to risks, including non-payment in full or conversion in whole or in part – by means of a transaction or series of transactions and in one or more steps – into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates, under Canadian bank resolution powers.

Senior Notes that are Bail-inable Notes (as defined below) are subject to conversion in whole or in part – by means of a transaction or series of transactions and in one or more steps – into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates under subsection 39.2(2.3) of the CDIC Act and to variation or extinguishment in consequence and subject to the application of the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein in respect of the operation of the CDIC Act with respect to the Senior Notes.

Certain provisions of and regulations under the *Bank Act* (Canada) (the "**Bank Act**"), the CDIC Act and certain other Canadian federal statutes pertaining to banks (collectively, the "**Bail-in Regime**"), provide for a bank recapitalization regime for banks designated by the Superintendent of Financial Institutions (Canada) (the "**Superintendent**") as domestic systemically important banks ("**D-SIBs**"), which include the Bank.

The expressed objectives of the Bail-in Regime include reducing government and taxpayer exposure in the unlikely event of a failure of a D-SIB, reducing the likelihood of such a failure by increasing market discipline and reinforcing that bank shareholders and creditors are responsible for the D-SIBs' risks and not taxpayers, and preserving financial stability by empowering the Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation ("**CDIC**"), Canada's resolution authority, to quickly restore a failed D-SIB to viability and allow it to remain open and operating, even where the D-SIB has experienced severe losses.

Under the CDIC Act, in circumstances where the Superintendent is of the opinion that the Bank has ceased, or is about to cease, to be viable and viability cannot be restored or preserved by exercise of the Superintendent's powers under the Bank Act, the Superintendent, after providing the Bank with a reasonable opportunity to make representations, is required to provide a report to CDIC. Following receipt of the Superintendent's report, CDIC may request the Minister of Finance for Canada (the "**Minister of Finance**") to recommend that the Governor in Council (Canada) make an Order (as defined below) and, if the Minister of Finance is of the opinion that it is in the public interest to do so, the Minister of Finance may recommend that the Governor in Council (Canada) make, and on such recommendation, the Governor in Council (Canada) may grant, one or more of the following orders (each an "**Order**"):

- vesting in CDIC, the shares and subordinated debt of the Bank specified in the Order (a "**Vesting Order**");

- appointing CDIC as receiver in respect of the Bank (a "**Receivership Order**");

- if a Receivership Order has been made, directing the Minister of Finance to incorporate a federal institution designated in the Order as a bridge institution wholly owned by CDIC and specifying the date and time as of which the Bank's deposit liabilities are assumed (a "**Bridge Bank Order**"); or

- if a Vesting Order or Receivership Order has been made, directing CDIC to carry out a conversion, by converting or causing the Bank to convert, in whole or in part – by means of a transaction or series of transactions and in one or more steps – the shares and liabilities of the Bank that are subject to the Bail-in Regime into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates (a "**Conversion Order**").

Following a Vesting Order or a Receivership Order, CDIC will assume temporary control or ownership of the Bank and will be granted broad powers under that Order, including the power to sell or dispose of all or a part of the assets of the Bank, and the power to carry out or cause the Bank to carry out a transaction or a series of transactions the purpose of which is to restructure the business of the Bank.

Under a Bridge Bank Order, CDIC has the power to transfer the Bank's insured deposit liabilities and certain assets and other liabilities of the Bank to a bridge institution. Upon the exercise of that power, any assets and liabilities of the Bank that are not transferred to the bridge institution would remain with the Bank, which would then be wound up. In such a scenario, any liabilities of the Bank, including any outstanding Senior Notes (whether or not such Senior Notes are Bail-inable Notes), that are not assumed by the bridge institution could receive only partial or no repayment in the ensuing wind-up of the Bank.

Upon the making of a Conversion Order, prescribed shares and liabilities under the Bail-in Regime that are subject to that Conversion Order will, to the extent converted, be converted into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates, as determined by CDIC (a "**Bail-in Conversion**"). Subject to certain exceptions discussed below, senior debt issued on or after September 23, 2018, with an initial or amended term to maturity (including explicit or embedded options) greater than 400 days, that is unsecured or partially secured and that has been assigned a CUSIP or ISIN or similar identification number are subject to a Bail-in Conversion. Shares, other than common shares, and subordinated debt of the Bank are also subject to a Bail-in Conversion, unless they are non-viability contingent capital. All Senior Notes that are subject to Bail-in Conversion will be identified as Bail-inable Notes in the applicable Final Terms (or the Pricing Supplement in the case of PSM Notes) ("**Bail-inable Notes**").

Shares and liabilities which would otherwise be bail-inable but were issued before September 23, 2018 are not subject to a Bail-in Conversion unless, in the case of any such liability, including any Notes, the terms of such liability are amended to increase their principal amount or to extend their term to maturity on or after

September 23, 2018, and that liability, as amended, meets the requirements to be subject to a Bail-in Conversion. However, the Bank does not intend to amend or re-open a Series of Notes where such re-opening would have the effect of making the relevant Notes subject to Bail-in Conversion. Covered bonds, certain derivatives and certain structured notes (as such term is used in the Bail-in Regime) are expressly excluded from a Bail-in Conversion. To the extent that any Notes constitute structured notes (as such term is used under the Bail-in Regime) they will not be Bail-inable Notes and will not be identified as Bail-inable Notes in the applicable Final Terms (or the Pricing Supplement in the case of PSM Notes). As a result, claims of some creditors whose claims would otherwise rank equally with those of the holders of Bail-inable Notes would be excluded from a Bail-in Conversion and thus the holders and beneficial owners of Bail-inable Notes will have to absorb losses ahead of these other creditors as a result of the Bail-in Conversion.

If the CDIC were to take action under the Canadian bank resolution powers with respect to the Bank, this could result in holders or beneficial owners of Senior Notes being exposed to losses and, in the case of Bail-inable Notes, conversion of the Senior Notes in whole or in part. Upon a Bail-in Conversion, the holders of Notes ("**Noteholders**") holding Bail-inable Notes that are converted will be obligated to accept the common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates into which such Bail-inable Notes, or any portion thereof, are converted even if such Noteholders do not at the time consider such common shares to be an appropriate investment for them, and despite any change in the Bank or any of its affiliates or the fact that such common shares are issued by an affiliate of the Bank or any disruption to or lack of a market for such common shares or disruption to capital markets generally. The terms and conditions of the Bail-in Conversion will be determined by CDIC in accordance with and subject to certain requirements discussed below (see "*The number of common shares to be issued in connection with, and the number of common shares that will be outstanding following, a Bail-in Conversion are unknown. It is also unknown whether the shares to be issued will be those of the Bank or one of its affiliates"* below). See also "*Risks related to Senior Notes generally - Investors who hold less than the minimum Specified Denomination (including after a partial Bail-in Conversion) may be unable to sell their Notes and may be adversely affected if definitive Notes are subsequently required to be issued"* below for a risk of partial conversions.

As a result, holders of Bail-inable Notes should consider the risk that they may lose all of their investment, including the principal amount plus any accrued interest, if CDIC were to take action under the Canadian bank resolution powers, including the Bail-in Regime, and that any remaining outstanding Senior Notes, or common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates into which Bail-inable Notes are converted, may be of little value at the time of a Bail-in Conversion and thereafter.

Bail-inable Notes will provide only limited acceleration and enforcement rights for the Bail-inable Notes and will include other provisions intended to qualify such Notes as TLAC.

In connection with the Bail-in Regime, the Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions' ("**OSFI**") guideline (the "**TLAC Guideline**") on Total Loss Absorbing Capacity ("**TLAC**") applies to and establishes standards for D-SIBs, including the Bank. Under the TLAC Guideline, beginning November 1, 2021, the Bank is required to maintain a minimum capacity to absorb losses composed of unsecured external long-term debt that meets the prescribed criteria or regulatory capital instruments to support recapitalization in the event of a failure. Bail-inable Notes and regulatory capital instruments that meet the prescribed criteria will constitute TLAC of the Bank.

In order to comply with the TLAC Guideline, Bail-inable Notes must provide for terms and conditions necessary to meet the prescribed criteria and qualify at their issuance as TLAC instruments of the Bank under the TLAC Guideline. Those criteria include the following:

- the Bank cannot directly or indirectly have provided financing to any person for the express purpose of investing in the Bail-inable Notes;

- the Bail-inable Note is not subject to set-off or netting rights;

- the Bail-inable Note must not provide rights to accelerate repayment of principal or interest payments outside of bankruptcy, insolvency, wind-up or liquidation, except that events of default relating to the non-payment of scheduled principal and/or interest payments will be permitted where they are subject to a cure period of no less than 30 business days and clearly disclose to investors that: (i) acceleration is only permitted where an Order has not been made in respect of the Bank; and (ii) notwithstanding any acceleration, the instrument continues to be subject to a Bail-in Conversion prior to its repayment;

- the Bail-inable Note may be redeemed or purchased for cancellation only at the initiative of the Bank and, where the redemption or purchase would lead to a breach of the Bank's TLAC requirements, that redemption or purchase would be subject to the prior approval of the Superintendent;

- the Bail-inable Note does not have credit-sensitive dividend or coupon features that are reset periodically based in whole or in part on the Bank's credit standing; and

- where an amendment or variance of the Bail-inable Note's terms and conditions would affect its recognition as TLAC, such amendment or variance will only be permitted with the prior approval of the Superintendent.

As a result, the terms of the Bail-inable Notes provide that acceleration will only be permitted (i) if the Bank defaults in the payment of the principal of, or interest on, such bail-inable notes and, in each case, the default continues for a period of 30 Payment Business Days, or (ii) certain bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization events occur. Holders and beneficial owners of bail-inable notes may only exercise, or direct the exercise of, such rights in respect of Bail-inable Notes where an Order has not been made under Canadian bank resolution powers pursuant to subsection 39.13(1) of the CDIC Act in respect of the Bank. Notwithstanding the exercise of those rights, bail-inable notes will continue to be subject to Bail-in Conversion until repaid in full.

The terms of the Bail-inable Notes also provide that holders or beneficial owners of Bail-inable Notes will not be entitled to exercise, or direct the exercise of, any set-off or netting rights with respect to Bail-inable Notes. In addition, where an amendment, modification or other variance that can be made to the Bail-inable Notes would affect the recognition of the Bail-inable Notes by the Superintendent as TLAC, that amendment, modification or variance will require the prior approval of the Superintendent.

The circumstances surrounding a Bail-in Conversion are unpredictable and can be expected to have an adverse effect on the market price of Bail-inable Notes.

The decision as to whether the Bank has ceased, or is about to cease, to be viable is a subjective determination by the Superintendent that is outside the control of the Bank. Upon a Bail-in Conversion, the interests of depositors and holders of liabilities and securities of the Bank that are not converted will effectively all rank in priority to the portion of Bail-inable Notes that are converted. In addition, except as provided for under the compensation process, the rights of Noteholders in respect of the Bail-inable Notes that have been converted will rank on parity with other holders of common shares of the Bank (or, as applicable, common shares of the affiliate whose common shares are issued on the Bail-in Conversion).

There is no limitation on the type of Order that may be made where it has been determined that the Bank has ceased, or is about to cease, to be viable. As a result, Noteholders holding Bail-inable Notes may be exposed to losses through the use of Canadian bank resolution powers other than a Conversion Order or in liquidation. See "*Senior Notes will be subject to risks, including non-payment in full or conversion in*

whole or in part – by means of a transaction or series of transactions and in one or more steps – into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates, under Canadian bank resolution powers" above*.*

Because of the uncertainty regarding when and whether an Order will be made and the type of Order that may be made, it will be difficult to predict when, if at all, Bail-inable Notes could be converted into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates and there is not likely to be any advance notice of an Order. As a result of this uncertainty, trading behaviour in respect of the Bail-inable Notes may not follow trading behaviour associated with convertible or exchangeable securities or, in circumstances where the Bank is trending towards ceasing to be viable, other senior debt. Any indication, whether real or perceived, that the Bank is trending towards ceasing to be viable can be expected to have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bail-inable Notes, whether or not the Bank has ceased, or is about to cease, to be viable. Therefore, in those circumstances, Noteholders holding Bail-inable Notes may not be able to sell their Bail-inable Notes easily or at prices comparable to those of senior debt securities not subject to Bail-in Conversion.

The number of common shares to be issued in connection with, and the number of common shares that will be outstanding following, a Bail-in Conversion are unknown. It is also unknown whether the shares to be issued will be those of the Bank or one of its affiliates.

Under the Bail-in Regime there is no fixed and pre-determined contractual conversion ratio for the conversion of the Bail-inable Notes, or other shares or liabilities of the Bank that are subject to a Bail-in Conversion, into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates, nor are there specific requirements regarding whether liabilities subject to a Bail-in Conversion are converted into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates. CDIC determines the timing of the Bail-in Conversion, the portion of bail-inable shares and liabilities to be converted and the terms and conditions of the conversion, subject to parameters set out in the Bail-in Regime. Those parameters, include that:

- in carrying out a Bail-in Conversion, CDIC must take into consideration the requirement in the Bank Act for banks to maintain adequate capital;

- CDIC must use its best efforts to ensure that shares and liabilities subject to a Bail-in Conversion are only converted after all subordinate ranking shares and liabilities that are subject to a Bail-in Conversion and any subordinate non-viability contingent capital instruments have been previously converted or are converted at the same time;

- CDIC must use its best efforts to ensure that the converted part of the liquidation entitlement of a share subject to a Bail-in Conversion, or the converted part of the principal amount and accrued and unpaid interest of a liability subject to a Bail-in Conversion, is converted on a pro rata basis for all shares or liabilities subject to a Bail-in Conversion of equal rank that are converted during the same restructuring period;

- holders of shares and liabilities that are subject to a Bail-in Conversion must receive a greater number of common shares per dollar of the converted part of the liquidation entitlement of their shares, or the converted part of the principal amount and accrued and unpaid interest of their liabilities, than holders of any subordinate shares or liabilities subject to a Bail-in Conversion that are converted during the same restructuring period or of any subordinate non-viability contingent capital that is converted during the same restructuring period;

- holders of shares or liabilities subject to a Bail-in Conversion of equal rank that are converted during the same restructuring period must receive the same number of common shares per dollar of the converted part of the liquidation entitlement of their shares or the converted part of the principal amount and accrued and unpaid interest of their liabilities; and

- holders of shares or liabilities subject to a Bail-in Conversion must receive, if any non-viability contingent capital of equal rank to the shares or liabilities is converted during the same restructuring period, a number of common shares per dollar of the converted part of the liquidation entitlement of their shares, or the converted part of the principal amount and accrued and unpaid interest of their liabilities, that is equal to the largest number of common shares received by any holder of the non-viability contingent capital per dollar of that capital.

As a result, it is not possible to anticipate the potential number of common shares of the Bank or its affiliates that would be issued in respect of any Bail-inable Note converted on a Bail-in Conversion, the aggregate number of such common shares that will be outstanding following the Bail-in Conversion, the effect of dilution on the common shares received from other issuances under or in connection with an Order or related actions in respect of the Bank or its affiliates or the value of any common shares received by the Noteholder, which could be significantly less than the principal amount of the converted Bail-inable Notes. It is also not possible to anticipate whether shares of the Bank or shares of its affiliates would be issued in a Bail-in Conversion. There may be an illiquid market, or no market at all, in the common shares issued upon a Bail-in Conversion and such Noteholders may not be able to sell those common shares at a price equal to the value of the converted Bail-inable Notes and as a result may suffer significant losses that may not be offset by compensation, if any, received as part of the compensation process. Fluctuations in exchange rates may exacerbate such losses.

By acquiring Bail-inable Notes, each Noteholder or beneficial owner of that Bail-inable Note is deemed to agree to be bound by a Bail-in Conversion and so will have no further rights in respect of Bail-inable Notes that are converted in a Bail-in Conversion other than those provided under the Bail-in Regime. Any potential compensation to be provided through the compensation process under the CDIC Act is unknown.

The CDIC Act provides for a compensation process for Noteholders holding Bail-inable Notes who immediately prior to the making of an Order, directly or through an intermediary, own Bail-inable Notes that are converted in a Bail-in Conversion. While this process applies to successors of such Noteholders it does not apply to assignees or transferees of the Noteholder following the making of the Order and does not apply if the amounts owing under the relevant Bail-inable Notes are paid in full.

Under the compensation process, the compensation to which such Noteholders are entitled is the difference, to the extent it is positive, between the estimated liquidation value and the estimated resolution value of the relevant Bail-inable Notes. The liquidation value is the estimated value the Bail-inable Noteholders would have received if an order under the *Winding-up and Restructuring Act* (Canada) had been made in respect of the Bank, as if no Order had been made and without taking into consideration any assistance, financial or otherwise, that is or may be provided to the Bank, directly or indirectly, by CDIC, the Bank of Canada, the Government of Canada or a province of Canada, after any order to wind up the Bank has been made.

The resolution value in respect of relevant Bail-inable Notes is the aggregate estimated value of the following: (a) the relevant Bail-inable Notes, if they are not held by CDIC and they are not converted, after the making of an Order, into common shares under a Bail-in Conversion; (b) common shares that are the result of a Bail-in Conversion after the making of an Order; (c) any dividend or interest payments made, after the making of the Order, with respect to the relevant Bail-inable Notes to any person other than CDIC; and (d) any other cash, securities or other rights or interests that are received or to be received with respect to the relevant Bail-inable Notes as a direct or indirect result of the making of the Order and any actions taken in furtherance of the Order, including from CDIC, the Bank, the liquidator of the Bank, if the Bank is wound up, the liquidator of a CDIC subsidiary incorporated or acquired by order of the Governor in Council for the purposes of facilitating the acquisition, management or disposal of real property or other

assets of the Bank that CDIC may acquire as the result of its operations that is liquidated or the liquidator of a bridge institution if the bridge institution is wound up.

In connection with the compensation process, CDIC is required to estimate the liquidation value and the resolution value in respect of the portion of converted Bail-inable Notes and is required to consider the difference between the estimated day on which the liquidation value would be received and the estimated day on which the resolution value is, or would be, received.

CDIC must, within a reasonable period following a Bail-in Conversion, make an offer of compensation by notice to the relevant Noteholders that held Bail-inable Notes equal to, or in value estimated to be equal to, the amount of compensation to which such Noteholders are entitled or provide a notice stating that such Noteholders are not entitled to any compensation. In either case, such notice is required to include certain prescribed information, including important information regarding the rights of such Noteholders to seek to object and have the compensation to which they are entitled determined by an assessor (a Canadian Federal Court judge) where holders of liabilities representing at least 10 per cent. of the principal amount and accrued and unpaid interest of the liabilities of the same class object to the offer or absence of compensation. The period for objecting is limited (45 days following the day on which a summary of the notice is published in the Canada Gazette) and failure by Noteholders holding a sufficient principal amount plus accrued and unpaid interest of affected Bail-inable Notes to object within the prescribed period will result in the loss of any ability to object to the offered compensation or absence of compensation, as applicable. CDIC will pay the relevant Noteholders the offered compensation within 135 days after the date on which a summary of the notice is published in the *Canada Gazette* if the offer of compensation is accepted, or the Noteholder does not notify CDIC of acceptance or objection to the offer, or if the Noteholder objects to the offer but the 10 per cent. threshold described above is not met within the aforementioned 45-day period.

Where an assessor is appointed, the assessor could determine a different amount of compensation payable, which could either be higher or lower than the original amount. The assessor is required to provide holders, whose compensation it determines, notice of its determination. The assessor's determination is final and there are no further opportunities for review or appeal. CDIC will pay the relevant holders the compensation amount determined by the assessor within 90 days of the assessor's notice.

By its acquisition of an interest in any Bail-inable Note, each Noteholder or beneficial owner of that Bail-inable Note is deemed to agree to be bound by a Bail-in Conversion and so will have no further rights in respect of its Bail-inable Notes to the extent those Bail-inable Notes are converted in a Bail-in Conversion, other than those provided under the Bail-in Regime.

A similar compensation process to the one set out above applies, in certain circumstances, where as a result of CDIC's exercise of bank resolution powers, Senior Notes are assigned to an entity which is then wound-up.

Following a Bail-in Conversion, Noteholders that held Bail-inable Notes that have been converted will no longer have rights against the Bank as creditors

Upon a Bail-in Conversion, the rights, terms and conditions of the portion of Bail-inable Notes that are converted, including with respect to priority and rights on liquidation, will no longer apply as the portion of converted Bail-inable Notes will have been converted on a full and permanent basis into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates ranking on parity with all other outstanding common shares of that entity. If a Bail-in Conversion occurs, then the interest of the depositors, other creditors and holders of liabilities of the Bank not bailed-in as a result of the Bail-in Conversion will all rank in priority to those common shares.

Given the nature of the Bail-in Conversion, holders or beneficial owners of Bail-inable Notes that are converted will become holders or beneficial owners of common shares at a time when the Bank's and potentially its affiliates' financial condition has deteriorated. They may also become holders or beneficial owners of common shares at a time when the relevant entity may have received or may receive a capital injection or equivalent support with terms that may rank in priority to the common shares issued in a Bail-in Conversion with respect to the payment of dividends, rights on liquidation or other terms although there is no certainity that any such capital injection or support will be forthcoming.

Bail-inable Notes may be redeemed after the occurrence of a TLAC Disqualification Event

If the applicable Final Terms (or the Pricing Supplement in the case of PSM Notes) for the Notes of such Series specify that a TLAC Disqualification Event Call is applicable, the Bank may, at its option with the prior approval of the Superintendent, redeem all, but not less than all of the outstanding Notes of that Series prior to their stated maturity date on, or within 90 days after, the occurrence of the TLAC Disqualification Event (as defined in the Conditions) at the Early Redemption Amount specified in the applicable Final Terms (or the Pricing Supplement in the case of PSM Notes), together (if applicable) with any accrued but unpaid interest to (but excluding) the date fixed for redemption. If the Bank redeems the Notes of such Series, Noteholders may not be able to reinvest the redemption proceeds in securities offering a comparable anticipated rate of return. Additionally, although the terms of each Series of Bail-inable Notes are anticipated to be established to satisfy the TLAC criteria within the meaning of the TLAC Guideline to which the Bank is subject, it is possible that any Series of Bail-inable Notes may not satisfy the criteria in future rulemaking or interpretations.

UK resolution risks applicable to the Notes

*The United Kingdom's Banking Act 2009 (as amended, the "**UK Banking Act**") confers substantial powers on a number of UK authorities designed to enable them to take a range of actions in relation to UK banks, UK building societies, UK investment firms and UK recognised central counterparties which are considered to be at risk of failing. In certain circumstances such actions may also be taken with modifications, against a third country institution or investment firm. The exercise of any of these actions in relation to the Bank could materially adversely affect the value of any Notes.*

Under the UK Banking Act, substantial powers are granted to HM Treasury, the Bank of England, the Financial Conduct Authority and the Prudential Regulation Authority (the "**PRA**") (together, the "**Authorities**") as part of a special resolution regime (the "**SRR**"). These powers can be exercised, as applicable, by the Authorities in respect of a third country incorporated credit institution (such as the Bank) or a third country incorporated investment firm ("**third country entity**") either where that third country entity is subject to resolution in its jurisdiction of incorporation (a "**third country resolution action**") or where no third country resolution actions have been taken, but the Authorities consider that the commencement of resolution proceedings is in the public interest. The Authorities' powers (such as those to bail-in liabilities) are subject to additional conditions where they are used in respect of branches of third-country entities (such as the Bank) as compared with their use in respect of UK banks.

Risks related to Notes issued by the Bank's London branch

Notes are issued by the Bank's London Branch if the Branch of Account specified in the Final Terms is London.

Where the Authorities choose to recognise a third country resolution action, in whole or in part, they must make a statutory instrument which may provide for the exercise of the stabilisation options in relation to the third country entity. This instrument may apply to: (i) assets of the third country entity or its group located in the UK or governed by UK law; and (ii) rights or liabilities of the third country entity (including the Notes) that are

booked by its London branch, governed by UK law, or where the claims in relation to such rights and liabilities are enforceable in the UK. Accordingly, exercise of these powers is possible where the relevant Authorities are acting to support or give full effect to a resolution carried out by the Canadian resolution authority and the Authorities' actions may include actions such as transferring assets located in the UK to a purchaser under the Canadian equivalent of a sale of business tool, or to a bridge bank in Canada.

In addition, under the European Bank Recovery and Resolution Directive which has been implemented in the UK through the UK Banking Act, the UK has provided the Authorities with the necessary powers to resolve the London branch of a third country entity (such as the Bank's London branch) that is not subject to third country resolution action (including resolution proceedings of the Canadian authorities), or where the Authorities have refused to recognise or enforce third country resolution action. The powers available to the Bank of England, when acting independently to resolve a London branch of a third country entity are: (i) powers to transfer some or all of the assets, rights and liabilities (the "**business of the branch**") to a private sector purchaser, bridge bank or asset management vehicle; and (ii) the power to bail in liabilities (including the Notes) in connection with the transfer to the private-sector purchaser, bridge bank or asset management vehicle (the "**Independent Resolution of UK Branch Powers**" or "**IRUKBPs**"). These powers could affect the Notes, to the extent that they are considered to be within the "business of the branch".

The Notes will be considered to be within the "business of the branch" where they arise 'as a result of the operations of the Bank's London branch'. Where the Notes are issued in the name of the Bank's London branch and/or are included within the London branch's annual return form (a type of annual account for the branch) to the PRA it is likely that such Notes will be considered by the Authorities to be within the "business of the branch". However, these powers are untested, and if there is an adequate degree of operational involvement by the Bank's London branch in the issuance, there is a risk that the Authorities may consider that the Notes issued by the Bank in Canada to be within the "business of the branch" due to the broad definition of this term.

Risks for Noteholders

Noteholders may be subject to the relevant powers listed above, which may result in such Noteholders losing some or all of their investment. As at the date of this Prospectus, the Authorities have not exercised any powers under the SRR in respect of either the Bank or the Bank's London branch and there has been no indication that they will do so. However, there can be no assurance that this will not change and any exercise of any power under the SRR or any suggestion of such exercise could, therefore, adversely affect the rights of the Noteholders, the price or value of their investment in the Notes and/or the ability of the Bank to satisfy its obligations under the relevant Notes.

The paragraphs below set out some of the possible consequences of the exercise of the powers under the SRR.

The SRR may be triggered prior to insolvency of the Bank

The purpose of the IRUKBPs is to address the situation where all or part of the business of a third country entity has encountered, or is likely to encounter, financial difficulties, giving rise to wider public interest concerns in the UK, and so to transfer (and then write down where necessary) those rights and liabilities of the branch of the third country entity. The Authorities may exercise the IRUKBPs if either Conditions 1, 2, 4 and 5 are met, or 3 and 4 are met, or 4 and 5(a) are met: Condition 1: The Bank is failing or likely to fail (i.e. failing to satisfy the threshold conditions or the Bank or its London branch being unable or unwilling to pay debts or liabilities owed to EEA creditors or otherwise arising from the business of the branch as they fall due); Condition 2: It is not reasonably likely that action will be taken by or in respect of the Bank that will result in Condition 1 above ceasing to be met; Condition 3: Either: (a) the third-country entity is unable or unwilling, or is likely in the near future to be unable or unwilling, to pay its debts or other liabilities owed to EEA creditors or

otherwise arising from the business of the London branch as they fall due; and (b) no Canadian resolution action has been taken, or other normal insolvency proceedings initiated, and it is not likely in the near future that resolution action will be taken or proceedings initiated; Condition 4: Making a property transfer instrument is necessary having regard to public interest in the advancement of one or more resolution objectives; and Condition 5: Either: (a) Canadian resolution action has been taken (or the Authorities have been notified that action will be taken) and the Authorities have or propose to refuse to recognise such action; or (b) Canadian resolution action has not been, and is not likely to be, taken in relation to the Bank. It is therefore possible that the IRUKBPs could be exercised prior to the point at which any insolvency proceedings with respect to the relevant entity could be initiated.

A partial transfer of business of the Bank's London branch may result in a deterioration of the Bank's creditworthiness

If the Bank's London branch were made subject to the IRUKBPs, and a partial transfer of its business to another entity were effected, the quality of the assets and the quantum of the liabilities not transferred and remaining with the Bank's London branch (which may include the Notes) will result in a deterioration in the creditworthiness of the Bank and, as a result, increase the risk that it will be unable to meet its obligations in respect of the Notes and/or eventually become subject to administration or insolvency proceedings. In such circumstances, Noteholders may have a claim for compensation under compensation schemes in Canada, but there can be no assurance that the Noteholders would thereby recover compensation promptly or equal to any loss actually incurred.

Depositor preference

In addition, amendments to the UK Insolvency Act 1986 have introduced changes to the treatment and ranking of certain preferential debts with the result that certain eligible deposits will rank in priority to the claims of ordinary (i.e. non-preferred) unsecured creditors in the event of an insolvency. This means that if the Senior Notes are transferred to another entity subject to the UK Banking Act in the UK under the IRUKBPs, the claims of Noteholders would rank junior to the claims in respect of liabilities afforded preferred status and accordingly, in the event of insolvency or resolution of that UK entity, Notes would be available to absorb losses ahead of liabilities which benefit from such preference.

As at the date of this Prospectus, the relevant Authorities have not made an instrument or order under the UK Banking Act in respect of the Bank or the Bank's London branch and there has been no indication that they will make any such instrument or order. However, there can be no assurance that this will not change and/or that the Noteholders will not be adversely affected by any such order or instrument if made.

Risks related to the structure of a particular issue of Notes

Optional redemption by the Bank

An optional redemption feature of Notes is likely to limit their market value and could reduce secondary market liquidity. During any period when the Bank may elect to redeem Notes, the market value of those Notes generally will not rise substantially above the price at which they can be redeemed. This also may be true prior to any redemption period.

If the Final Terms provide for an Issuer Call Option, the Bank may redeem all or some of the Notes in its sole discretion when its cost of borrowing is lower than the interest rate on the Notes. At those times, a holder of a Note generally would not be able to reinvest the redemption proceeds at an effective interest rate as high as the interest rate on the Notes being redeemed and may only be able to do so at a significantly lower rate. Potential purchasers should consider reinvestment risk in light of other investments available at that time.

Floating Rate Notes with caps or floors

Notes with variable interest rates can be volatile investments. If they are structured to include caps or floors, or other leverage multipliers or factors or other similar related features, their market values may be even more volatile than those of securities that do not include those features.

Fixed/Floating Rate Notes

Fixed/Floating Rate Notes may bear interest at a rate that converts from a fixed rate to a floating rate, or from a floating rate to a fixed rate. If the rate converts from a fixed rate to a floating rate, the spread on the Fixed/Floating Rate Notes may be less favourable than then prevailing spreads on comparable Floating Rate Notes tied to the same reference rate. In addition, the new floating rate at any time may be lower than the rates on the other Notes. If the rate converts from a floating rate to a fixed rate, the fixed rate may be lower than the then prevailing rates payable on the Notes.

Range Accrual Notes

If the Notes include a "range accrual" feature ("**Range Accrual Notes**") then interest will only be paid if the level of the underlying interest rates on the relevant valuation date(s) is at or above one or more specific lower barrier(s) and, if applicable, also at or below one or more specified upper barrier(s). It is possible that such level of the underlying interest rates on the relevant valuation date(s) will not be at or above the lower barrier(s) or, if applicable, not be within the range during the relevant interest determination period and, therefore, no interest will be payable on the relevant interest payment date. This means that the amount of interest payable to a Noteholder over the term of the Range Accrual Notes may vary and may be zero.

Fixed Rate Reset Notes

A holder of Senior Notes with a fixed rate of interest that will periodically reset during the term of the relevant Senior Notes is exposed to the risk of fluctuating interest rate levels and uncertain interest income. Fixed Rate Reset Notes will initially bear interest at the Initial Rate of Interest until (but excluding) the First Reset Date. On the First Reset Date, the Second Reset Date (if applicable) and each Subsequent Reset Date (if any) thereafter, the interest rate will be reset to be the sum of (i) the applicable Mid-Swap Rate, Benchmark Gilt Rate or Reference Bond Rate and (ii) the relevant Margin as determined by the Calculation Agent on the relevant Reset Determination Date (each such interest rate, a "Subsequent Reset Rate"). The Subsequent Reset Rate for any Reset Period could be less than the Initial Rate of Interest or the Subsequent Reset Rate for prior Reset Periods and could affect the value of an investment in the Fixed Rate Reset Notes.

Regulation and reform of LIBOR and EURIBOR and any other benchmark could adversely affect the value of any Notes linked to such "benchmarks"

The London Interbank Offered Rate ("**LIBOR**"), Euro Interbank Offered Rate ("**EURIBOR**"), Canadian Dollars Offered Rate ("**CDOR**"), CNH Hong Kong interbank offered rate ("**CNH HIBOR**"), Hong Kong interbank offered rate ("**HIBOR**"), the Relevant Swap Rate (as defined in the Conditions) and other rates and indices which are deemed to be "benchmarks" are the subject of recent national, international and other regulatory guidance and proposals for reform. Some of these reforms are already effective whilst others are still to be implemented. These reforms may cause such benchmarks to perform differently than in the past, to disappear entirely, or have other consequences which cannot be predicted. Any such consequence could have a material adverse effect on any Notes linked to such a "benchmark".

Regulation (EU) 2016/1011 (the "**Benchmark Regulation**") was published in the Official Journal of the European Union on June 29, 2016 and has applied from January 1, 2018 (with the exception of provisions

specified in Article 59 (mainly on critical benchmarks) that have applied since June 30, 2016). The Benchmark Regulation could have a material impact on any Notes linked to LIBOR, EURIBOR, CDOR, CNH HIBOR, HIBOR or the Relevant Swap Rate, in particular, if the methodology or other terms of the "benchmark" are changed in order to comply with the terms of the Benchmark Regulation, and such changes could (amongst other things) have the effect of reducing or increasing the rate or level, or affecting the volatility of the published rate or level, of the benchmark. In addition, the Benchmark Regulation stipulates that each administrator of a "benchmark" regulated thereunder must be licensed by the competent authority of the Member State where such administrator is located. There is a risk that administrators of certain "benchmarks" will fail to obtain a necessary licence, preventing them from continuing to provide such "benchmarks". Other administrators may cease to administer certain "benchmarks" because of the additional costs of compliance with the Benchmark Regulation and other applicable regulations, and the risks associated therewith. There is also a risk that certain benchmarks may continue to be administered but may in time become obsolete.

As an example of such benchmark reforms, on July 27, 2017, the FCA, which regulates LIBOR, announced that it will no longer persuade or compel banks to submit rates for the calculation of the LIBOR benchmark after 2021 (the "**FCA Announcement**"). The FCA Announcement indicates that the continuation of LIBOR on the current basis (or at all) cannot and will not be guaranteed after 2021. The potential elimination of the LIBOR benchmark or any other benchmark, or changes in the manner of administration of any benchmark, could require or result in an adjustment to the interest provisions of the Conditions (as further described in Condition 4.(l) (*Benchmark Discontinuation*)), or result in other consequences, in respect of any Notes linked to such benchmark (including but not limited to Notes whose interest rates are linked to LIBOR or any other such benchmark which is subject to reform). Furthermore, even prior to the implementation of any changes, uncertainty as to the nature of alternative reference rates and as to potential changes to such benchmark may adversely affect such benchmark during the term of the relevant Notes, the return on the relevant Notes and the trading market for securities based on the same benchmark.

The Conditions provide for certain fallback arrangements in the event that a published benchmark, such as LIBOR or EURIBOR, (including any page on which such benchmark may be published (or any successor service)) becomes unavailable, including the possibility that the rate of interest could be determined by an Independent Adviser (as defined in the Conditions) or the Issuer or set by reference to a successor rate or an alternative reference rate and that such successor rate or alternative reference rate may be adjusted (if required) in order to reduce or eliminate, to the extent reasonably practicable in the circumstances, any economic prejudice or benefit (as applicable) to investors arising out of the replacement of the relevant benchmark. In certain circumstances the ultimate fallback of interest for a particular Interest Period (as defined in the Conditions) may result in the rate of interest for the last preceding Interest Period being used. This may result in the effective application of a fixed rate for Floating Rate Notes based on the rate which was last observed on the Relevant Screen Page (as defined in the Conditions) or, in the case of Fixed Rate Reset Notes, the application of the Reset Rate for the preceding Reset Period or, in the case of the First Reset Date, the Initial Rate of Interest applicable to such Notes on the Interest Commencement Date. In addition, due to the uncertainty concerning the availability of successor rates and alternative reference rates and the involvement of an Independent Adviser or the Issuer, the relevant fallback provisions may not operate as intended at the relevant time.

Any such consequences could have a material adverse effect on the value of and return on any such Notes. Moreover, any of the above matters or any other significant change to the setting or existence of any relevant reference rate could affect the ability of the Issuer to meet its obligations under the Floating Rate Notes or Fixed Rate Reset Notes and could have a material adverse effect on the value or liquidity of, and the amount payable under, the Floating Rate Notes or Fixed Rate Reset Notes. Investors should consider these matters when making their investment decision with respect to the relevant Floating Rate Notes or Fixed Rate Reset Notes.

Notes issued at a substantial discount or premium may experience significant price volatility in response to changes in interest rates

The issue price of Notes specified in the applicable Final Terms may be more than the market value of such Notes as of the issue date, and the price, if any at which a Dealer or any other person willing to purchase the Notes in secondary market transactions may be lower than the issue price.

The market values of Notes issued at a substantial discount or premium to their principal amount tend to fluctuate more in relation to general changes in interest rates than do prices for conventional interest-bearing Notes. If market interest rates increase, such Notes can suffer higher price losses as compared to conventional interest-bearing Notes having the same maturity and credit rating. Generally, the longer the remaining term of the Notes, the greater the price volatility as compared to conventional interest-bearing Notes with comparable maturities and credit.

Investors who hold less than the minimum Specified Denomination (including after a partial Bail-in Conversion) may be unable to sell their Notes and may be adversely affected if definitive Notes are subsequently required to be issued

In relation to any issue of Notes which have denominations consisting of a minimum Specified Denomination and may be tradeable in the clearing systems in the minimum Specified Denomination and one or more higher integral multiples of another smaller amount, it is possible that such Notes may be traded in the clearing systems in amounts in excess of the minimum Specified Denomination that are not integral multiples of such minimum Specified Denomination. In addition, in the case of a partial Bail-in Conversion of Bail-inable Notes or any resolution action in respect of Senior Notes generally, a holder may as a result of such partial Bail-in Conversion end up with an amount that is less than a Specified Denomination. In such a case, a holder who, as a result of trading such amounts or such partial Bail-in Conversion, holds an amount that is less than the minimum Specified Denomination in its account with the relevant clearing system would not be able to sell the remainder of such holding without first purchasing a principal amount of Notes at, or in excess of, the minimum Specified Denomination such that it is holding amounts to at least the minimum Specified Denomination. Further, a holder who, as a result of trading such amounts or such partial Bail-in Conversion, holds an amount which is less than the minimum Specified Denomination in its account with the relevant clearing system at the relevant time may not receive a definitive Note in respect of such holding (should definitive Notes be printed) and would need to purchase a principal amount of Notes at or in excess of the minimum Specified Denomination such that it is holding amounts to a Specified Denomination before definitive Notes are issued to such holders.

If definitive Notes are issued, holders should be aware that definitive Notes which have a denomination that is not an integral multiple of the minimum Specified Denomination may be illiquid and difficult to trade.

Notes denominated in Renminbi are subject to additional risks

Notes denominated in Renminbi ("**RMB Notes**") may be issued under the Programme. RMB Notes contain particular risks for potential investors, including:

Renminbi is not freely convertible and this may adversely affect the liquidity of the Notes; the availability of RMB funds for servicing the Notes may be subject to future limitations imposed by the PRC government.

Renminbi is not freely convertible at present. The PRC government continues to regulate conversion between Renminbi and foreign currencies. However, there has been significant reduction in control by the PRC government in recent years, particularly over trade transactions involving import and export of goods and services as well as other frequent routine foreign exchange transactions. These transactions are known as current account items.

On the other hand, remittance of Renminbi by foreign investors into and out of the PRC for the settlement of capital account items, such as capital contributions, debt financing and securities investment is generally only permitted upon obtaining specific approvals from, or completing specific registrations or filings with, the relevant authorities on a case-by-case basis and is subject to a strict monitoring system. Regulations in the PRC on the remittance of Renminbi into and out of the PRC for settlement of capital account items are being developed.

From October 1, 2016, the Renminbi has been added to the Special Drawing Rights ("**SDR**") basket created by the International Monetary Fund.

There is no assurance that the PRC government will continue to gradually liberalise control over cross-border remittance Renminbi in the future, that the schemes for Renminbi cross-border utilisation will not be discontinued or that new PRC regulations will not be promulgated in the future which have the effect of restricting or eliminating the remittance of Renminbi into or out of the PRC.

Despite Renminbi internationalisation pilot programme and efforts in recent years to internationalise the currency, there can be no assurance that the PRC government will not impose interim or long-term restrictions on the cross-border remittance of Renminbi. In the event that funds cannot be repatriated out of the PRC in Renminbi, this may affect the overall availability of Renminbi outside the PRC and the ability of the Issuer to source Renminbi to finance its obligations under the RMB Notes.

There is only limited availability of Renminbi outside the PRC, which may affect the liquidity of the RMB Notes and the Bank's ability to source Renminbi outside the PRC to service such RMB Notes

As a result of the restrictions by the PRC government on cross-border Renminbi fund flows, the availability of Renminbi outside the PRC is limited. While the People's Bank of China (the "**PBOC**") has entered into agreements (the "**Settlement Agreements**") on the clearing of Renminbi business with financial institutions (the "**Renminbi Clearing Banks**") in a number of financial centres and cities (including but not limited to Hong Kong, Singapore and London) and is in the process of establishing Renminbi clearing and settlement mechanisms in several other jurisdictions and has established the Cross Border Inter-Bank Payments System to facilitate cross border Renminbi settlement, the current size of Renminbi denominated financial assets outside the PRC remains limited.

There are restrictions imposed by the PBOC on Renminbi business participating banks in respect of cross-border Renminbi settlement, such as those relating to direct transactions with PRC enterprises. Furthermore, although the PBOC has gradually allowed qualified participating banks to access the PRC's onshore interbank market for the purchase and sale of Renminbi, Renminbi business participating banks do not have direct Renminbi liquidity support from the PBOC. In cases where the participating banks cannot source sufficient Renminbi through the above channels, they will need to source Renminbi from outside the PRC to square such open positions. The RMB Clearing Banks only have limited access to onshore liquidity support from the PBOC for the purpose of squaring open positions of participating banks for limited types of transactions and are not obliged to square for participating banks any open positions resulting from other foreign exchange transactions or conversion services.

Although it is expected that the offshore Renminbi market will continue to grow in depth and size, its growth is subject to many constraints as a result of PRC laws and regulations on foreign exchange. There is no assurance that new PRC regulations will not be promulgated or the Settlement Arrangements will not be terminated or amended in the future which will have the effect of restricting availability of Renminbi offshore. The limited availability of Renminbi outside the PRC may affect the liquidity of its RMB Notes. To the extent the Issuer is required to source Renminbi in the offshore market to service its RMB Notes, there is no assurance that the Issuer will be able to source such Renminbi on satisfactory terms, if at all.

Investment in the RMB Notes is subject to exchange rate risks

The value of the Renminbi against the euro and other foreign currencies fluctuates from time to time and is affected by changes in the PRC and international political and economic conditions as well as many other factors. Recently, the PBOC implemented changes to the way it calculates the Renminbi's daily midpoint against the U.S. dollar to take into account market-maker quotes before announcing such daily midpoint. This change and others that may be implemented may increase the volatility in the value of the Renminbi against other currencies. Except in the limited circumstances as described in the Conditions, the Issuer will make all payments of interest and principal with respect to the RMB Notes in Renminbi. As a result, the value of these Renminbi payments in euro or other applicable foreign currency terms may vary with the changes in the prevailing exchange rates in the marketplace. If the value of Renminbi depreciates against the euro or other applicable foreign currency, the value of a Noteholder's investment in euro or other applicable foreign currency terms will have declined.

Investment in the RMB Notes is subject to currency risk

If the Issuer is not able, or it is impracticable for it, to satisfy its obligation to pay interest and principal on the RMB Notes when due, in whole or in part, in Renminbi in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre(s) as a result of Inconvertibility, Non transferability or Illiquidity, the Issuer shall be entitled, on giving not less than five nor more than 30 days' irrevocable notice to the Noteholders prior to the due date for payment, to settle any such payment, in whole or in part, in U.S. dollars on the due date at the U.S. Dollar Equivalent (as defined in the Conditions) of any such interest or principal amount otherwise payable in Renminbi, as the case may be. See also "*Exchange rate risks and exchange controls*" below.

Payments with respect to the RMB Notes may be made only in the manner designated in the RMB Notes

Holders of beneficial interests in the RMB Notes may be required to provide certifications and other information (including Renminbi account information) in order to allow such holder to receive payments in Renminbi in accordance with the Renminbi clearing and settlement system for participating banks in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre(s) (as defined in the Conditions).

All Renminbi payments to investors in respect of the RMB Notes will be made solely (i) for so long as the RMB Notes are represented by global certificates held with the common depositary or common safekeeper, as the case may be, for Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg or any alternative clearing system, by transfer to a Renminbi bank account maintained in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre in accordance with prevailing rules and procedures of those clearing systems or (ii) for so long as the RMB Notes are in definitive form, by transfer to a Renminbi bank account maintained in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre in accordance with prevailing rules and regulations. Other than as described in the Conditions, the Issuer cannot be required to make payment in relation to RMB Notes by any other means (including in any other currency or by transfer to a bank account in the PRC).

There may be PRC tax consequences with respect to investment in the RMB Notes

In considering whether to invest in the RMB Notes, investors should consult their individual tax advisers with regard to the application of PRC tax laws to their particular situations as well as any tax consequences arising under the laws of any other tax jurisdictions. The value of a Noteholder's investment in the RMB Notes may be materially and adversely affected if the Noteholder is required to pay PRC tax with respect to acquiring, holding or disposing of and receiving payments under those RMB Notes.

Risks related to payment on the Notes in an Alternative Currency

The Issuer's primary obligation is to make all payments of interest, principal and other amounts with respect to Notes in the relevant Specified Currency. However, if Alternative Currency Payment is specified

to be applicable to the Notes and if access to the Specified Currency becomes restricted, the Issuer will be entitled to make any such payment in the Alternative Currency at the rates, and in the manner, set out in Condition 6(f).

In such case, the value of the Notes could therefore be affected by fluctuations in the value of the Specified Currency, as compared to the Alternative Currency. There is a risk that the exchange rate (or the exchange rates) used to determine the Alternative Currency amount of any payments in respect of the Notes may significantly change (including changes due to devaluation or revaluation of the Specified Currency) or that authorities with jurisdiction over such currencies could cause a decrease in (1) the Alternative Currency equivalent yield on the Notes, (2) the Alternative Currency equivalent value of the amount payable in respect of any other amount payable on the Notes and (3) the Alternative Currency equivalent market value of the Notes. Therefore, there is a possibility that the Alternative Currency value of the Notes at the time of any sale or payment, as the case may be, of the Notes may be below the Alternative Currency value of the Notes on investing, depending on the exchange rate at the time of any such sale or payment, as the case may be.

Risks related to the Notes generally

Set out below is a brief description of certain risks relating to the Notes generally:

Modification, Waivers and Substitution

The Terms and Conditions of the Notes contain a provision for calling meetings of Noteholders to consider matters affecting their interests generally. These provisions permit defined majorities to bind (and to modify or waive certain Terms and Conditions of the Notes or covenants and agreements made by the Bank) all Noteholders including Noteholders who did not attend and vote at the relevant meeting and Noteholders who voted in a manner contrary to the majority, provided that an amendment, modification or variance that may affect the recognition of Bail-inable Notes by the Superintendent as TLAC or, any changes pursuant to the benchmark discontinuation provisions in Condition 4(l), that would change the effective maturity date of the Bail-inable Notes, will require the prior approval of the Superintendent. The Terms and Conditions of the Notes also provide that if the Branch of Account is not in Canada, the Bank may change the Branch of Account for the deposits evidenced by a Note upon and subject to the provisions set forth in Condition 18.

In addition, pursuant to Condition 4(l), certain changes may be made to the Interest Calculation provisions of the Floating Rate Notes or Fixed Rate Reset Notes in the circumstances set out in Condition 4(l), without the requirement for the consent of the Noteholders. See "*Regulation and reform of LIBOR and EURIBOR and any other benchmark could adversely affect the value of any Notes linked to such "benchmarks"".*

Notes may be subject to write-off, write down or conversion under the resolution powers of authorities outside of Canada

The Bank has operations in a number of countries outside of Canada, including in particular the United States and the United Kingdom. In accordance with the Financial Stability Board's "Key attributes of effective Resolution Regimes for Financial Institutions" dated October 15, 2014, resolution authorities should have resolution powers over local branches of foreign firms and the capacity to use their powers either to support a resolution carried out by a foreign home authority (for example, by ordering a transfer of property located in its jurisdiction to a bridge institution established by the foreign home authority) or, in exceptional cases, to take measures on its own initiative where the foreign home authority is not taking action or acts in a manner that does not take sufficient account of the need to preserve the local jurisdiction's financial stability or where other relevant conditions are met. It is therefore possible that resolution authorities in countries where the Bank has branches or assets, including the United States and the United Kingdom, may adversely affect the rights of holders of the Notes, including by using any powers they may have to write down or convert the Notes. For further information on the risks related to the use of

resolution powers by authorities in the United Kingdom, please see "*UK resolution risks applicable to the Notes"* above.

Change of Law

The Terms and Conditions of the Notes are based on the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein in effect as at the date of issue of the relevant Notes. No assurance can be given as to the impact of any possible judicial decision or change to the laws of the Province of Ontario or the federal laws of Canada applicable therein or administrative practice after the date of issue of the relevant Notes. Such changes in law may include, but are not limited to, changes in statutory, tax and regulatory regimes during the life of the Notes.

Change of Tax Law

Statements in this Prospectus concerning the taxation of investors are of a general nature and are based upon current tax law and published government or administrative practice in the jurisdictions stated. Such law and government or administrative practice is, in principle, subject to change, possibly with retrospective effect, and this could adversely affect Investors.

In addition, any change in the Bank's tax status or in taxation legislation or government or administrative practice in a relevant jurisdiction could adversely impact (i) the ability of the Bank to service the Notes and (ii) the market value of the Notes.

Criminal Rate of Interest

All Notes issued under the Programme are governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein. *The Criminal Code* (Canada) prohibits the receipt of "interest" at a "criminal rate" (namely, an effective annual rate of interest that exceeds 60 per cent.). Accordingly, the provisions for the payment of interest or a Final Redemption Amount in excess of the aggregate nominal amount of the Notes may not be enforceable if the provision provides for the payment of "interest" in excess of an effective annual rate of interest of 60 per cent.

Notes in NGN form

The NGN form allows for Notes being issued and held in a manner which are intended to permit them to be recognised as eligible collateral for monetary policy of the central banking system for the euro (the "**Eurosystem**") and intra-day credit operations by the Eurosystem either upon issue or at any or all times during their life. However, in any particular case, such recognition will depend upon satisfaction of the Eurosystem eligibility criteria at the relevant time. Investors should make their own assessment as to whether the Notes meet such Eurosystem eligibility criteria. As of April 16, 2018, unsecured bank bonds issued by credit institutions not established in the EU (including the Senior Notes) denominated in any currency are no longer eligible to be used as collateral in the Eurosystem.

No obligation to maintain listing

The Bank is not under any obligation to Noteholders to maintain any listing of Notes and may, in good faith, determine that it is unduly burdensome to maintain such listing and seek to terminate the listing of such Notes provided it uses its reasonable endeavours to seek an alternative admission to listing, trading and/or quotation of such Notes by another listing authority, securities exchange and/or quotation system that it deems appropriate (including a market which is not a Regulated Market or a market outside the EEA), provided such other stock exchange shall be commonly used for the listing and trading of debt securities in the international bond markets.

Although there is no assurance as to the liquidity of any Notes as a result of the listing on a Regulated Market or any other market, de-listing such Notes may have a material effect on an investor's ability to (i)

continue to hold such Notes or (ii) resell the Notes in the secondary market or (iii) use the Notes as eligible collateral.

Interests of the Dealers

Certain of the Dealers and their affiliates have engaged, and may in the future engage, in investment banking and/or commercial banking transactions with, and may perform services for, the Bank and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business without regard to the Noteholders.

In addition, in the ordinary course of their business activities, the Dealers and their affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers without regard to the effect on the Issuer's business or profitability, or to the Noteholders. Such investments and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments of the Bank or the Bank's affiliates. Certain of the Dealers or their affiliates that have a lending relationship with the Bank routinely hedge their credit exposure to the Bank consistent with their customary risk management policies. Typically, such Dealers and their affiliates would hedge such exposure by entering into transactions which consist of either the purchase of credit default swaps or the creation of short positions in securities, including potentially the Notes issued under the Programme. The Dealers and their affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or financial instruments and may hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

Bank liable to make payments when due on the Notes; no deposit insurance

The Bank is liable to make payments when due on the Notes. The Notes, which constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank for purposes of the Bank Act, will not be insured under the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* or any other governmental insurance scheme of any other country, and will constitute legal, valid and binding direct, unconditional, unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank and rank at least *pari passu* with all other unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank, present and future (except as otherwise prescribed by law and subject to the exercise of bank resolution powers) and without any preference among themselves.

Risks related to the market generally

Set out below is a brief description of the principal market risks, including liquidity risk, exchange rate risk, interest rate risk and credit risk:

The secondary market generally

Notes may have no established trading market when issued, and one may never develop. If a market does develop, it may not be very liquid and may be sensitive to changes in financial markets. Therefore, investors may not be able to sell their Notes easily or at prices that will provide them with a yield comparable to similar investments that have a developed liquid secondary market. This is particularly the case for Notes that are especially sensitive to interest rate, currency or market risks, are designed for specific investment objectives or strategies or have been structured to meet the investment requirements of limited categories of investors or for Notes the outstanding number of which is very low. These types of Notes generally would have a more limited secondary market and more price volatility than conventional debt securities. Illiquidity may have a severely adverse effect on the market value of Notes. Accordingly, the Notes should not be viewed as trading instruments and investors should be prepared to hold the Notes to maturity. In addition, liquidity may be limited if the Issuer makes large allocations to a limited number of investors.

In addition, Noteholders should be aware of the prevailing and widely reported global credit market conditions (which continue at the date of this Prospectus), whereby there is a potential lack of liquidity in the secondary market for instruments similar to the Notes. Such a lack of liquidity may result in Noteholders suffering losses in secondary market resales even if there is no decline in the performance of the assets of the Bank. The Bank cannot predict which of these circumstances will change and whether, if and when they do change, there will be a more liquid market for the Notes and instruments similar to the Notes at that time.

Market perceptions concerning the instability of the euro, the potential re-introduction of individual currencies within the Euro-zone, or the potential dissolution of the euro entirely, could adversely affect the value of the Notes

As a result of the credit crisis in Europe, in particular in Greece, Italy, Ireland, Portugal and Spain, the European Commission created the European Financial Stability Facility (the "**EFSF**") and the European Financial Stability Mechanism (the "**EFSM**") to provide funding to Euro-zone countries in financial difficulties that seek such support. In March 2011, the European Council agreed on the need for Euro-zone countries to establish a permanent stability mechanism, the European Stability Mechanism (the "**ESM**"), which will be activitated by mutual agreement, to assume the role of the EFSF and the EFSM in providing external financial assistance to Euro-zone countries. As of July 1, 2013, the ESM is the sole and permanent mechanism for responding to new requirements for financial assistance by Euro-zone countries. Despite these measures, concerns persist regarding the debt burden of certain Euro-zone countries and their ability to meet future financial obligations, the overall stability of the euro and the suitability of the euro as a single currency given the diverse economic and political circumstances in individual Member States. These and other concerns could lead to the re-introduction of individual currencies in one or more Member States, or, in more extreme circumstances, the possible dissolution of the euro entirely. Should the euro dissolve entirely, the legal and contractual consequences for holders of euro-denominated obligations would be determined by laws in effect at such time. These potential developments, or market perceptions concerning these and related issues, could adversely affect the value of the Notes.

Exchange rate risks and exchange controls

The Bank will pay principal and interest on the Notes in (a) the Specified Currency, or (b) if Alternative Currency Payment is specified to be applicable to the Notes, the Alternative Currency or (c) if the alternative currency payment provisions applicable to the RMB Notes are triggered, U.S. dollars (such relevant currency of payment being, the "**Settled Currency**"). This presents certain risks relating to currency conversions if an investor's financial activities are denominated principally in a currency or currency unit (the "**Investor's Currency**") other than the Settled Currency. These include the risk that exchange rates may significantly change (including changes due to devaluation of the Settled Currency or revaluation of the Investor's Currency) and the risk that authorities with jurisdiction over the Investor's Currency may impose or modify exchange controls. An appreciation in the value of the Investor's Currency relative to the Settled Currency would decrease (1) the Investor's Currency-equivalent yield on the Notes, (2) the Investor's Currency-equivalent value of the principal payable on the Notes and (3) the Investor's Currency-equivalent market value of the Notes.

Government and monetary authorities may impose (as some have done in the past) exchange controls that could adversely affect an applicable exchange rate. As a result, investors may receive less interest or principal than expected, or no interest or principal.

Fixed Rate Notes bear interest at a fixed rate, which may affect the secondary market value and/or the real value of the Notes over time due to fluctuations in market interest rates and the effects of inflation

Investment in Fixed Rate Notes bear interest at a fixed rate. Investors should note that (i) if market interest rates start to rise then the income to be paid on Fixed Rate Notes might become less attractive and the price the investors may get if they sell such Fixed Rate Notes could fall (however, the market price of the Fixed Rate Notes has no effect on the interest amounts due on the Fixed Rate Notes or what investors will be due to be repaid on the Maturity Date if the Fixed Rate Notes are held by the investor until they mature) and (ii) inflation will reduce the real value of the Fixed Rate Note over time which may affect what investors can buy with the investments in the future and which may make the fixed interest rate on the Fixed Rate Notes less attractive in the future.

Credit ratings might not reflect all risks and are subject to change

One or more independent credit rating agencies may assign credit ratings to the Bank or the Notes. The ratings might not reflect the potential impact of all risks related to structure, market, additional factors discussed above, and other factors that may affect the value of the Notes. A credit rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and may be revised, suspended or withdrawn by the rating agency at any time. Investors may suffer losses if the credit rating assigned to the Notes does not reflect the then creditworthiness of such Notes.

In general, European regulated investors are restricted under the CRA Regulation from using credit ratings for regulatory purposes, unless such ratings are issued by a credit rating agency established in the EU and registered under the CRA Regulation (and such registration has not been withdrawn or suspended), subject to transitional provisions that apply in certain circumstances. Such general restriction will also apply in the case of credit ratings issued by non-EU credit rating agencies, unless the relevant credit ratings are endorsed by an EU-registered credit rating agency or the relevant non-EU rating agency is certified in accordance with the CRA Regulation (and such endorsement action or certification, as the case may be, has not been withdrawn or suspended), subject to transitional provisions that apply in certain circumstances. The list of registered and certified rating agencies published by ESMA on its website in accordance with the CRA Regulation is not conclusive evidence of the status of the relevant rating agency included in such list, as there may be delays between certain supervisory measures being taken against a relevant rating agency and the publication of the updated ESMA list. Certain information with respect to the credit rating agencies is set out on the cover of this Prospectus and in the section “Important Notice – Credit Rating Agencies”.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The following documents which have previously been published or are published simultaneously with this Prospectus and have been filed with the Financial Conduct Authority shall be incorporated in, and form part of, this Prospectus:

(1) the annual information form for the year ended October 31, 2017 dated December 5, 2017 (the "**2017 AIF**");

(2) the audited consolidated financial statements, which comprise the consolidated balance sheet as at October 31, 2017 and October 31, 2016 and the consolidated statements of income, changes in equity, comprehensive income and cash flows for the years ended October 31, 2017, October 31, 2016 and October 31, 2015 and notes, comprising a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information (the "**2017 Financial Statements**"), prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards ("**IFRS**"), together with the auditors' report thereon (excluding, for the avoidance of doubt, the auditors' report on internal control over financial reporting under Standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States));

(3) management's discussion and analysis for the year ended October 31, 2017 (the "**2017 MD&A**");

(4) unaudited interim consolidated financial statements for the three-month and nine-month periods ended 31 July 2018 with comparative unaudited interim consolidated financial statements for the three-month and nine-month periods ended 31 July 2017 (the "**Third Quarter 2018 Interim Financial Statements**");

(5) management's discussion and analysis for the three-month and nine-month periods ended 31 July 2018 (the "**Third Quarter 2018 MD&A**"); and

(6) the sections entitled "Terms and Conditions of the Notes" set out in the prospectuses dated January 19, 2018, January 20, 2017, January 22, 2016, January 23, 2015, January 24, 2014, January 25, 2013 and December 19, 2011, relating to the Programme (for the avoidance of doubt, the applicable Final Terms for a Tranche of Notes will indicate the Terms and Conditions applicable to such Tranche and unless otherwise indicated in the applicable Final Terms, the Terms and Conditions of all Notes issued after the date hereof shall be those set out in this Prospectus).

Any information contained in a document incorporated by reference herein which is not incorporated in, and does not form part of, this Prospectus is either not relevant for investors or is contained elsewhere in this Prospectus. For the purposes of the Prospectus Directive as implemented in the United Kingdom, any information contained in documents incorporated by reference by documents which are themselves incorporated by reference in this Prospectus, shall not form part of this Prospectus.

Following the publication of this Prospectus one or more supplements may be prepared by the Bank and approved by the UK Listing Authority in accordance with Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive or, in the case of PSM Notes, in accordance with Section 81 of the FSMA. Statements contained in any such supplement (or contained in any document incorporated by reference therein) shall, to the extent applicable (whether expressly, by implication or otherwise), be deemed to modify or supersede statements contained in this Prospectus or in a document which is incorporated by reference in this Prospectus. Any statement

so modified or superseded shall not, except as so modified or superseded, constitute a part of this Prospectus.

Copies of this Prospectus, any supplementary prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference in this Prospectus and any supplementary prospectus (i) can be viewed on the website of the National Storage Mechanism at *http://www.morningstar.co.uk/uk/NSM* under "Bank of Montreal" and (ii) will be available for inspection at the specified office in London, England of HSBC Bank plc, the initial issuing and principal paying agent for the Notes (the "**Agent**") and can be obtained without charge at the Treasury Department of the Bank, 100 King Street West, 1 First Canadian Place, 10th Floor, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, M5X 1A1.

In the case of Notes to be admitted to the Market, the Bank will, in the event of any significant new factor, material mistake or inaccuracy relating to the information included in this Prospectus which is capable of affecting the assessment of any Notes, prepare a supplement to this Prospectus or publish a new Prospectus (in each case, published in accordance with the Prospectus Directive) for use in connection with any subsequent issue of Notes. The Bank has undertaken to the Dealers in the Programme Agreement (as defined in "Subscription and Sale") that it will comply with section 87G of the FSMA.

In the case of PSM Notes, the Bank will, if there is significant change to any matter in the Listing Particulars the inclusion of which is required by Section 80 of the FSMA, the listing rules of the FCA or the FCA, or a signficiant new matter arises, the inclusion of information in respect of which would have been so required if it had arisen when the Listing Particulars were prepared, prepare an appropriate amendment or supplement to this Prospectus which, in respect of any subsequent issues of PSM Notes, shall constitute supplementary listing particulars as required by Section 81 of the FSMA. The Bank has undertaken to the Dealers in the Programme Agreement (as defined in "Subsciption and Sale" below) that it will comply with Section 81 of the FSMA.

Except for (i) the financial information in respect of the year ended October 31, 2010 and prior years contained in the 2017 MD&A incorporated by reference herein (which has been prepared in accordance with Canadian generally accepted accounting principles as defined at that time) and (ii) the non-GAAP measures included in the Bank's 2017 MD&A and Third Quarter 2018 MD&A (whose basis of preparation is specified therein), the financial information of the Bank incorporated by reference or otherwise contained in this document has been prepared in accordance with IFRS.

ISSUE OF NOTES

Notes will be issued on a continuous basis in series (each a "**Series**") having one or more issue dates. Notes of the same Series shall have identical terms (or identical other than in respect of the first payment of interest), it being intended that each Note of a Series will be interchangeable with all other Notes of that Series. Each Series may be issued in tranches (each a "**Tranche**") on different issue dates and at different issue prices. The specific terms of each Tranche will be set forth in Final Terms to this Prospectus ("**Final Terms**").

FINAL TERMS OR DRAWDOWN PROSPECTUS

In this section the expression "necessary information" means, in relation to any Tranche of Notes, the information necessary to enable investors to make an informed assessment of the assets and liabilities, financial position, profits and losses and prospects of the Bank and of the rights attaching to the Notes.

Such necessary information will be contained in the applicable Final Terms unless, in accordance with Article 16 of the Prospective Directive or Section 81 of the FSMA, as the case may be, any of such necessary information constitutes a significant new factor relating to the information contained in this Prospectus in which case such information, together with all of the other necessary information in relation to the relevant series of Notes, may be contained in a Drawdown Prospectus.

For a Tranche of Notes that is the subject of the Final Terms, those Final Terms will, for the purposes of that Tranche only, complete this Prospectus and must be read in conjunction with this Prospectus. The terms and conditions applicable to any particular Tranche of Notes which is the subject of Final Terms are the Terms and Conditions as completed to the extent described in the applicable Final Terms.

The terms and conditions applicable to any particular Tranche of Notes which is the subject of a Drawdown Prospectus will be the Terms and Conditions as supplemented, amended and/or replaced to the extent described in the relevant Drawdown Prospectus. In the case of a Tranche of Notes that is the subject of a Drawdown Prospectus, each reference in this Prospectus to Final Terms or to information being specified or identified in the applicable Final Terms shall be read and construed as a reference to the relevant Drawdown Prospectus or such information being specified or identified in the relevant Drawdown Prospectus unless the context requires otherwise.

Each Drawdown Prospectus will be a single document containing the necessary information relating to the Bank and the relevant Notes.

OVERVIEW OF THE PROGRAMME

The following overview does not purport to be complete and is taken from, and is qualified in its entirety by, the remainder of this Prospectus and, in relation to the terms and conditions of any particular Tranche of Notes, the applicable Final Terms. Words and expressions not otherwise defined in this section shall have the same meaning ascribed thereto in "Issue Procedures" and "Terms and Conditions of the Notes".

This Overview constitutes a general description of the Programme for the purposes of Article 22.5(3) of Commission Regulation (EC) No 809/2004 implementing the Prospectus Directive.

Issuer:	Bank of Montreal (the "**Bank**").
Issuer Legal Entity Identifiers (LEI):	NQQ6HPCNCCU6TUTQYE16
Description:	Senior Notes to be continuously offered pursuant to a Note Issuance Programme.
Arrangers:	Bank of Montreal, London Branch Barclays Bank PLC
Dealers:	Bank of Montreal, London Branch Barclays Bank PLC BMO Capital Markets Limited BNP Paribas Citigroup Global Markets Limited Commerzbank Aktiengesellschaft Crédit Agricole Corporate and Investment Bank Credit Suisse Securities (Europe) Limited Goldman Sachs International HSBC Bank plc J.P. Morgan Securities plc Lloyds Bank Corporate Markets plc Morgan Stanley & Co. International plc Société Générale UBS Limited and any additional person appointed from time to time by the Bank in accordance with the Programme Agreement either generally in respect of the Programme or in relation to a particular Tranche of Notes. Notes may also be sold directly to third parties other than Dealers on the basis of enquiries made by such third parties to the Bank (see "Subscription and Sale").
Regulations and Guidelines:	Notes shall be issued in compliance with applicable regulations and guidelines from time to time (see "Subscription and Sale"). In connection with the issue of Notes denominated or payable in Japanese yen ("**Yen Notes**"), the Bank will comply with all applicable laws, regulations and

guidelines of the relevant Japanese governmental and regulatory authorities in effect at the relevant time. The Bank or its designated agent shall submit reports or information as may be required from time to time by such laws, regulations and guidelines. Each Purchaser will be required to provide to the Bank any necessary information relating to Yen Notes (which shall not include the names of clients) so that the Bank may make any required reports to the Minister of Finance of Japan either through itself or through its designated agent.

The Bank will, in relation to Notes (including Notes denominated in sterling) the proceeds of which are to be accepted by the Bank in the United Kingdom, comply with all applicable laws, regulations and guidelines from time to time of United Kingdom authorities and relevant in the context of the issue of such Notes. The Bank is an authorised institution pursuant to the *Financial Services and Markets Act 2000* (Transitional Provision) (Authorised Persons) Order 2001.

Issuing and Principal Paying Agent: HSBC Bank plc

Paying Agent: Banque Internationale à Luxembourg, société anonyme, Luxembourg

Programme Amount: The maximum aggregate nominal amount of all Notes from time to time outstanding under the Programme (including Senior Notes and unsubordinated notes that do not constitute deposit liabilities issued under offering documents other than this Prospectus) will not exceed U.S.$20,000,000,000 (or its equivalent in other currencies calculated as described in the Programme Agreement). The Bank will have the option at any time to increase the amount of the Programme, subject to prior notice to the Dealers and delivery of specified documentation.

Method of Distribution: Notes may be distributed by way of private placement or (subject to any applicable selling restrictions) public offering and in each case on a syndicated or non-syndicated basis.

Notes will be issued on a continuous basis in series (each a "**Series**"). The Notes comprising each Series will have one or more issue dates, the same maturity date and will bear interest (if any) on the same basis and at the same rate (except in respect of the first payment of interest) and on terms otherwise identical. The Notes of each Series are intended to be interchangeable with all other Notes of that Series. The Notes of any Series with the same issue date and interest commencement date will comprise a tranche (a "**Tranche**"). Final Terms will be published in respect of each Tranche.

Alternatively, the Bank may agree with any Purchaser to issue a particular Tranche of Notes under the Programme pursuant to a Drawdown Prospectus prepared in connection with such Tranche. The terms and conditions applicable to each Tranche which is the subject of a Drawdown Prospectus will be those set out herein under "Terms and Conditions of the Notes" as supplemented, modified or replaced by the relevant Drawdown Prospectus. In the case of a Tranche of Notes that is the subject of a Drawdown Prospectus, each reference in this Prospectus to information being set out, specified, stated, shown, indicated or otherwise provided for in the relevant Drawdown Prospectus and,

as applicable, each other reference to Final Terms in the Prospectus shall be read and construed as a reference to such Drawdown Prospectus.

The Bank does not intend to re-open a Series of Senior Notes where such re-opening would have the effect of making the relevant Senior Notes subject to Bail-in Conversion.

Specified Currencies: Subject to any applicable legal or regulatory restrictions, Notes may be denominated or payable in any currency or currencies as may be agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s) (as specified in the applicable Final Terms) including, without limitation, Australian dollars, Canadian dollars, Czech koruna, Danish kroner, euro, Hong Kong dollars, Japanese yen, Norwegian kroner, New Zealand dollars, South African rand, sterling, Swedish kronor, Swiss francs, U.S. dollars and Renminbi.

If the Notes are payable in a currency other than euro or Renminbi and such currency is unavailable on the foreign exchange markets due to circumstances beyond its control, the Bank will be entitled to satisfy its obligations in respect of such payment by making payment in Euro on the basis of the spot exchange rate.

If the Notes are payable in Renminbi and the Bank cannot obtain Renminbi to satisfy its obligations on the Notes as a result of Inconvertibility, Non-transferability or Illiquidity (as defined in Condition 6(h)), the Bank shall be entitled to settle such payment in U.S. dollars.

Maturities: Notes may have any maturity as may be agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s) (as specified in the applicable Final Terms) subject, in the case of specific currencies, to all applicable legal, regulatory and central bank requirements.

Issue Price: Notes may be issued at par or at a discount to, or premium over, par and may be issued on a fully paid basis.

Issue Procedures: Notes will be issued in bearer form. Each Tranche of Notes will initially be represented by one or more temporary global Notes which (i) if in NGN form, will be deposited on the relevant Issue Date with a Common Safekeeper for Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg or (ii) if in CGN form, will be deposited on the relevant Issue Date with a depositary or a common depositary outside the United States on behalf of Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg and/or any other agreed clearing system. Beneficial interests in a temporary global Note will be exchangeable for beneficial interests in a permanent global Note on or after the date falling not earlier than 40 days after the relevant issue date following certification of non-United States beneficial ownership. Notwithstanding the foregoing, each Tranche of Senior Notes having an original maturity of one year or less will initially be represented by one or more permanent global Notes deposited as aforesaid. Beneficial interests in a global Note will be credited to the securities clearance accounts of the owners of such beneficial interests with the relevant clearing system.

Beneficial interests in a permanent global Note will be exchangeable for security-printed Definitive Notes only in the limited circumstances described in Condition 2 (see "Terms and Conditions of the Notes — Definitive Notes").

Owners of beneficial interests in temporary global Notes and permanent global Notes will not be considered holders thereof for purposes of payment of principal and interest on such Notes (except in the limited circumstances described under "Issue Procedures") and for the purposes of Condition 9.

Type of Notes: The Notes may be Fixed Rate Notes, Fixed Rate Step-Up Notes, Floating Rate Notes, Range Accrual Notes or Zero Coupon Notes or any combination of these.

Fixed Rate Notes: Interest on Fixed Rate Notes will be payable in arrear on such date or dates as may be agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s) and on redemption.

Interest in respect of Fixed Rate Notes will either be fixed amounts or be calculated on the basis of such Day Count Fraction (as defined in Condition 4(a) of the Terms and Conditions of the Notes) as may be agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s).

Fixed Rate Reset Notes: Fixed Rate Reset Notes will bear interest calculated by reference to a fixed rate of interest for an initial period and thereafter by reference to a fixed rate of interest recalculated on certain dates and by reference to a mid-market swap rate, a benchmark gilt rate or a reference bond rate, as adjusted for any applicable margin, in each case as may be specified in the applicable Final Terms, such interest being payable in arrear on the date(s) in each year specified in the applicable Final Terms.

Fixed Rate Step-Up Notes: Fixed Rate Step-Up Notes will pay interest at a fixed rate of interest, which increase periodically during the life of the Notes.

Floating Rate Notes: Floating Rate Notes will bear interest at (i) a rate calculated on the same basis as the floating amounts under a notional interest rate swap transaction governed by an agreement incorporating the 2006 ISDA Definitions (as published by the International Swaps and Derivatives Association, Inc., and as amended and updated as at the Issue Date of the first Tranche of the Notes of the relevant Series), or (ii) on the basis of a reference rate (being either LIBOR, EURIBOR, CDOR, CNH HIBOR, HIBOR or CMS Reference Rate Determination) appearing on the agreed screen page of a commercial quotation service.

Range Accrual Notes: Range Accrual Notes will pay interest in respect of each Interest Period equal to the product of (i) either (a) a specified fixed rate or (b) a floating rate or a spread rate plus or minus a margin, as the case may be, and (ii) a relevant fraction, calculated as set out in the Conditions.

Other provisions in relation to Floating Rate Notes and Range Accrual Notes:

Floating Rate Notes and Range Accrual Notes may also have a maximum interest rate, a minimum interest rate or both. Interest on Floating Rate Notes will be payable in arrear on the last day of each Interest Period as selected prior to issue by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s) and will be calculated on the basis of such Day Count Fraction (as defined in Condition 4(d) of the Terms and Conditions of the Notes) as may be agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s) as indicated in the applicable Final Terms.

Interest Payment Date(s) or Interest Period(s):

Notes will have such interest payment date(s) or period(s) as may be agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s) (as specified in the applicable Final Terms).

Benchmark Discontinuation:

On the occurrence of a Benchmark Event the Issuer may (subject to certain conditions and following consultation with an Independent Adviser (as defined in "*Terms and Conditions of the Notes*")) determine a Successor Rate, failing which an Alternative Rate and, in either case, an Adjustment Spread, if any, and any Benchmark Amendments in accordance with Condition 4(l), provided that where any amendment, modification or variance that can be made to Bail-inable Notes would affect their recognition by the Superintendent as TLAC or change the effective maturity date of the Bail-inable Notes, that amendment, modification or variance will require the prior written consent of the Superintendent.

Zero Coupon Notes:

Zero Coupon Notes may be issued at their nominal amount or at a discount to their nominal amount and will not bear interest other than in relation to interest due after the Maturity Date. In the case of early redemption of Zero Coupon Notes, the Early Redemption Amount shall be determined either on the basis of compounding of the Accrual Yield or without any compounding of the Accrual Yield, as specified in the applicable Final Terms.

Redemption and Purchase:

Except as provided in the immediately following sections, for taxation reasons, following an Event of Default, or, in the case of Range Accrual Notes only if specified in the applicable Final Terms, for illegality as described below, Notes will not generally be redeemable prior to their stated maturity. Bail-inable Notes will continue to be subject to Bail-in Conversion (as defined below) prior to their repayment in full.

The applicable Final Terms relating to each Series of Notes will indicate whether the Notes may be redeemed prior to their stated maturity at the option of the Bank ("**Bank Call Option**") and/or the Noteholders ("**Noteholder Put Option**") on a date or dates specified prior to such stated maturity and at a price or prices and on such terms as may be agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s); provided that, where a redemption of Bail-inable Notes by the Bank would lead to a breach of the Bank's TLAC requirements, such redemption will be subject to the prior approval of the Superintendent of

Financial Institutions (Canada) (the "**Superintendent**"). A Noteholder Put Option is not applicable to Bail-inable Notes.

In addition, Notes denominated in certain currencies may not be redeemed or purchased prior to any minimum time as may be required from time to time by the relevant monetary authority. Notes issued on terms that they must be redeemed before their first anniversary may be subject to restrictions on their denomination and distribution. See "Maturities" above.

Bail-inable Notes will continue to be subject to a Bail-in Conversion prior to their repayment in full.

Early Redemption for Illegality: In the case of Range Accrual Notes, in the event that the Bank determines in good faith that (i) the performance of its obligations under the Range Accrual Notes or (ii) any arrangements made to hedge under the Range Accrual Notes has or will become illegal, the Bank shall have the right to redeem the Range Accrual Notes at their Early Redemption Amount; provided that, where a redemption of Bail-inable Notes by the Bank would lead to a breach of the Bank's TLAC requirements, such redemption will be subject to the prior approval of the Superintendent.

Early Redemption For TLAC Disqualification Event: If so specified in the applicable Final Terms, Bail-inable Notes may be redeemed at the option of the Issuer prior to maturity at any time on, or within 90 days following, the occurrence of a TLAC Disqualification Event, subject to prior approval of the Superintendent, as described in "*Terms and Conditions of the Notes — Redemption and Purchase — Redemption due to TLAC Disqualification Event*". Bail-inable Notes will continue to be subject to a Bail-in Conversion prior to their repayment in full.

Denominations: Notes will be issued in such denominations as may be agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser(s) and specified in the applicable Final Terms, save that the minimum denomination of each Note will be such as may be allowed or required from time to time by the relevant central bank (or equivalent body, however called) or any laws or regulations applicable to the relevant Specified Currency, and save that in the case of Notes which are to be admitted to trading on the Market or offered to the public in a Member State of the European Economic Area in circumstances which require the publication of a prospectus under the Prospectus Directive, the minimum denomination of each Note will be €100,000 (or if the Notes are denominated in a currency other than the euro, the equivalent in such currency as at the date of issue of the Notes).

So long as the Notes are represented by a temporary global Note or a permanent global Note and the relevant clearing system(s) so permit, in the event that the Issuer issues Notes with a minimum denomination of EUR100,000 (or its equivalent in other currencies at the date of issue) as provided in the applicable Final Terms, the Notes shall be tradeable only in the principal amounts of at least EUR100,000 (or its equivalent in other currencies) and higher integral multiples of at least 1,000 in the relevant currency as

provided in the applicable Final Terms, notwithstanding that no definitive Notes will be issued with a denomination above 199,000 in such currency.

Taxation: All payments of principal and interest in respect of the Notes will be made without withholding or deduction for or on account of any taxes or other charges imposed by any governmental authority or agency in Canada or, in the case of Senior Notes whose Branch of Account is located outside Canada, of the country in which such branch is located, except as provided in Condition 9 (see "Terms and Conditions of the Notes — Taxation"). For further analysis of Canadian taxation implications, including Canadian withholding tax, see "Taxation - Canada" starting on page 146.

Status: The Senior Notes will constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank for purposes of the *Bank Act* (Canada) (the "**Bank Act**"). The Senior Notes will constitute legal, valid and binding unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank enforceable in accordance with their terms and will rank *pari passu* with all deposit and other unsubordinated liabilities of the Bank (except as otherwise provided by law and subject to the exercise of bank resolution powers) and without preference among themselves.

Senior Notes that are Bail-inable Notes (as defined in Condition 3(b)) are subject to a Bail-in Conversion (as defined below) under subsection 39.2(2.3) of the CDIC Act and to variation or extinguishment in consequence and subject to the application of the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein in respect of the operation of the CDIC Act with respect to the Bail-inable Notes.

The Senior Notes will not be deposits insured under the CDIC Act.

Agreement with respect to the exercise of Canadian Bail-in powers in relation to Bail-inable Notes: By acquiring Bail-inable Notes, each Noteholder (including each beneficial owner) is deemed to:

(i) agree to be bound, in respect of the Bail-inable Notes, by the CDIC Act, including the conversion of the Bail-inable Notes, in whole or in part – by means of a transaction or series of transactions and in one or more steps - into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates under subsection 39.2(2.3) of the CDIC Act and the variation or extinguishment of the Bail-inable Notes in consequence, and by the application of the laws of of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein in respect of the operation of the CDIC Act with respect to the Bail-inable Notes (a "**Bail-in Conversion**");

(ii) attorn to the jurisdiction of the courts in the Province of Ontario in Canada with respect to the CDIC Act and those laws;

(iii) have represented and warranted that the Bank has not directly or indirectly provided financing to the Noteholder for the express purpose of investing in the Bail-inable Notes; and

(iv) acknowledge and agree that the terms referred to in paragraphs (i) and (ii), above, are binding on that Noteholder despite any provisions in the Conditions, any other law that governs the Bail-inable Notes and any other agreement, arrangement or understanding between that Noteholder and the Bank with respect to the Bail-inable Notes.

Each holder or beneficial owner of the Bail-inable Notes that acquires an interest in the Bail-inable Notes in the secondary market and any successors, assigns, heirs, executors, administrators, trustees in bankruptcy and legal representatives of any such holder or beneficial owner shall be deemed to acknowledge, accept, agree to be bound by and consent to the same provisions specified herein to the same extent as the holders or beneficial owners that acquire an interest in the Bail-inable Notes upon their initial issuance, including, without limitation, with respect to the acknowledgement and agreement to be bound by and consent to the terms of the Bail-inable Notes related to the Bail-in Regime.

Events of Default for Senior Notes that are not Bail-inable Notes:

The terms of the Senior Notes that are not Bail-inable Notes contain events of default covering (a) non-payment for more than 30 days (in the case of interest) or five days (in the case of principal); and (b) the Bank becoming insolvent or bankrupt or subject to the provisions of the Winding-up and Restructuring Act (Canada) ("**WURA**") or the Bank goes into liquidation, either voluntarily or under an order of a court of competent jurisdiction, passing a resolution for the winding-up, liquidation or dissolution of the Bank, or being ordered wound-up or otherwise acknowledging its insolvency.

Events of Default for Bail-inable Notes:

The terms of the Bail-inable Notes provide for events of default which are limited to (a) non-payment for more than 30 business days of interest or principal; and (b) the Bank becoming insolvent or bankrupt or subject to the provisions of WURA or any statute hereafter enacted in substitution therefor, as WURA, or substituted statute, may be amended from time to time, or if the Bank goes into liquidation, either voluntarily or under an order of a court of competent jurisdiction, passes a resolution for the winding-up, liquidation or dissolution of the Bank, is ordered wound-up or otherwise acknowledges its insolvency; provided that Noteholders may only exercise, or direct the exercise of, those rights to accelerate the Bail-inable Notes upon such an event where an order has not been made pursuant to subsection 39.13(1) of the CDIC Act in respect of the Bank and, notwithstanding the exercise of any right to accelerate the Bail-inable Notes, Bail-inable Notes will continue to be subject to a Bail-in Conversion until repaid in full. A Bail-in Conversion will not be an event of default.

Waiver of Set-Off – Bail-inable Notes:

Bail-inable Notes are not subject to set-off or netting rights.

Branch of Account: For the purposes of the Bank Act, the main branch of the Bank in Toronto or London will take the deposits evidenced by the Senior Notes (as specified in the applicable Final Terms), but without prejudice to the provisions of Condition 6 (see "Terms and Conditions of the Notes — Payments"). Senior Notes, irrespective of the Branch of Account specified in the Final Terms, are obligations of the Bank.

Negative Pledge: None.

Cross Default: None (see "Terms and Conditions of the Notes — Events of Default").

Rating: This Programme has been rated by Moody's Canada, by S&P Canada and by Fitch. Notes issued under the Programme may be rated or unrated. When a Tranche of Notes is rated, such rating will be specified in the applicable Final Terms and will not necessarily be the same as the rating assigned to the Programme. A security rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and may be subject to revision or withdrawal at any time by the assigning rating agency. Investors may suffer losses if a credit rating assigned to the Notes does not reflect the then creditworthiness of such Notes.

Listing and Admission to Trading: Application has been made for the Notes issued under the Programme during the 12 month period from the date of the Prospectus to be admitted to the Official List and to trading on the Market. Application has also been made for the Notes to be admitted to trading on the PSM. The applicable Final Terms will specify whether such Notes have been admitted to trading on the Market or the PSM.

The Bank is not under any obligation to Noteholders to maintain any listing of Notes and may, in good faith, determine that it is unduly burdensome to maintain such listing and seek to terminate the listing of such Notes provided it uses its reasonable endeavours to seek an alternative admission to listing, trading and/or quotation of such Notes by another listing authority, securities exchange and/or quotation system to be agreed with the relevant Purchaser.

Governing Law and Jurisdiction: The Notes will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein. Ontario courts have jurisdiction in the event of litigation in respect of the Notes.

Non-United States Selling Restrictions: There will be specific restrictions on the offer and sale of the Notes and the distribution of offering materials in Canada, the European Economic Area (including the United Kingdom, France, the Republic of Italy and The Netherlands), Japan, Hong Kong, Singapore, the People's Republic of China and Taiwan, as well as other restrictions as may be required in connection with a particular issue of Notes. See "Subscription and Sale".

United States Selling Restrictions: The Issuer is Category 2 for the purposes of Regulation S under the Securities Act and the Notes are not Rule 144A eligible.

The Notes will be issued in compliance with the principles of the former United States Treas. Reg. §1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(D) (or any successor United States Treasury Regulation section, including without limitation, regulations issued in accordance with Internal Revenue Service Notice 2012-20 or otherwise in connection with the United States Hiring Incentives to Restore Employment Act of 2010) (the "**D Rules**") unless (i) the applicable Final Terms state that Notes are issued in compliance with the former United States Treas. Reg. §1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(C) (or any successor United States Treasury Regulation section, including without limitation, regulations issued in accordance with Internal Revenue Service Notice 2012-20 or otherwise in connection with the United States Hiring Incentives to Restore Employment Act of 2010) (the "**C Rules**") or (ii) the Notes are issued other than in compliance with the D Rules or the C Rules but in circumstances in which the Notes will not constitute "registration required obligations" under the United States Tax Equity and Fiscal Responsibility Act of 1982 ("**TEFRA**"), which circumstances will be referred to in the applicable Final Terms as a transaction to which TEFRA is not applicable.

Clearing Systems: Euroclear, Clearstream, Luxembourg and/or any other additional clearing system as agreed upon by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser.

Risk Factors: There are certain risks related to any issue of Notes under the Programme, which investors should ensure they fully understand. A non-exhaustive description of such risks is set out under "Risk Factors" from page 1 of this Prospectus.

ISSUE PROCEDURES

Notes will be issued in bearer form. The applicable Final Terms will specify whether TEFRA C or TEFRA D Rules apply or, in the case of Notes with a maturity of one year or less, that the TEFRA Rules are not applicable. If TEFRA C Rules apply, each issue of Notes will initially be represented by a permanent global Note, without interest coupons or talons. If TEFRA D Rules apply, each issue of Notes will initially be represented by one or more temporary global Notes, without interest coupons or talons.

Each Tranche of Notes will either initially be represented by one or more temporary global Notes which (i) if the temporary global Notes are intended to be issued in new global note ("**NGN**") form as specified in the applicable Final Terms, will be delivered on or prior to the relevant Issue Date to a common safekeeper (the "**Common Safekeeper**") for Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg; or (ii) if the temporary global Notes are intended to be issued in classic global note ("**CGN**") form as specified in the applicable Final Terms, will be delivered on or prior to the relevant Issue Date to a depositary or common depositary outside of the United States on behalf of Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg (the "**Common Depositary**"). Any reference herein to Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg shall, whenever the context so permits, be deemed to include a reference to any additional or alternative clearing system approved by the Bank and Agent.

If the global Note is in NGN form, Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg will be notified by or on behalf of the Bank as to whether or not such global Note is intended to be held in a manner which would allow Eurosystem eligibility. Depositing the global Note with the Common Safekeeper does not necessarily mean that the Notes will be recognised as eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra-day credit operations by the Eurosystem either upon issue or at any time or all times during their life. Such recognition will depend upon satisfaction of the Eurosystem eligibility criteria. As of April 16, 2018, unsecured bank bonds issued by credit institutions not established in the EU (including the Senior Notes) denominated in any currency are no longer eligible to be used as collateral in the Eurosystem.

Beneficial interests in a temporary global Note will be exchangeable for beneficial interests in a permanent global Note on or after the date falling not earlier than 40 days after the relevant issue date upon certification as to non-United States beneficial ownership (other than certain foreign branches of United States financial institutions and persons holding Notes through such foreign branches, to the extent permitted by United States Treasury Regulations). Notwithstanding the foregoing, each Tranche of Senior Notes having an original maturity of one year or less will initially be represented by one or more permanent global Notes deposited as aforesaid. Beneficial interests in a global Note will be credited to the securities clearance accounts of the owners of beneficial interests with the relevant clearing system. If an interest payment date for any Notes occurs while such Notes are represented by a temporary global Note, the related interest payment will be made (against presentation of the temporary global Note if the temporary global Note is issued in CGN form) only to the extent that certification of non-United States beneficial ownership has been provided by the owners of the beneficial interests to the relevant clearing system and a like certification (based on the certifications the clearing system has received) has been given by that clearing system to the Agent. No payment of principal or interest (if any) will be made on a temporary global Note on or after the date falling not earlier than 40 days after the issue date unless exchange for a beneficial interest in a permanent global Note is improperly refused by the Agent. Payments of principal or interest (if any) on a permanent global Note will be made through the relevant clearing system (against presentation or surrender, as the case may be, of the permanent global Note if the permanent global Note is in CGN form) without any requirement for further certification. Beneficial interests in a permanent global Note will be exchangeable for security-printed Definitive Notes, and (unless they are Zero Coupon Notes) interest coupons and talons for further coupons (if any) attached only in the limited circumstances described under "Terms and Conditions of the Notes — Definitive Notes".

The following legend will appear on all Notes:

> "The deposit to which this instrument relates is not insured under the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act*."

The following legend will appear on all permanent global Notes and Definitive Notes with an original maturity of more than 365 days and on all interest coupons and talons relating to such Notes issued where TEFRA D Rules is specified in the applicable Final Terms:

> "Any United States person who holds this obligation will be subject to limitations under the United States income tax laws including the limitations provided in sections 165(j) and 1287(a) of the Internal Revenue Code."

The sections referred to provide that United States holders, with certain exceptions, will not be entitled to deduct any loss on Notes or interest coupons and will not be entitled to capital gains treatment in respect of any gain on any sale, disposition or payment of principal in respect of Notes, interest coupons or talons.

Temporary and permanent global Notes and Definitive Notes will be issued by the Agent acting on behalf of the Bank.

Any beneficial interest in a global Note of a Series that is exchanged for, or transferred to a person who takes delivery in the form of, an interest in another global Note of the same Series will, upon transfer, cease to be an interest in the former such global Note and become an interest in the other global Note and, accordingly, will thereafter be subject to all procedures applicable to beneficial interests in such other global Note for as long as it remains such an interest.

The following legend will appear on Notes identified as Bail-inable Notes in the applicable Final Terms:

"THE NOTES ARE SUBJECT TO CONVERSION IN WHOLE OR IN PART – BY MEANS OF A TRANSACTION OR SERIES OF TRANSACTIONS AND IN ONE OR MORE STEPS – INTO COMMON SHARES OF BANK OF MONTREAL OR ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES UNDER SUBSECTION 39.2(2.3) OF THE CANADA DEPOSIT INSURANCE CORPORATION ACT ("**CDIC ACT**") AND TO VARIATION OR EXTINGUISHMENT IN CONSEQUENCE AND SUBJECT TO THE APPLICATION OF THE LAWS OF THE PROVINCE OF ONTARIO AND THE FEDERAL LAWS OF CANADA APPLICABLE THEREIN IN RESPECT OF THE OPERATION OF THE CDIC ACT WITH RESPECT TO THE NOTES."

Direct Rights

Each global Note provides that the holder may cause such global Note, or a portion of it, to become due and repayable in the circumstances described under "Terms and Conditions of the Notes – Events of Default" by stating in the notice to the Agent the nominal amount of the Notes that are becoming due and repayable. If the principal in respect of such Note becoming due and repayable in such circumstances is not paid before 8:00 p.m. (London time) on the relevant due date, the holder of the global Note representing such Notes may elect for direct enforcement rights against the Bank in favour of persons with beneficial interests in such Notes equal to or greater than the Specified Denomination as accountholders within the relevant clearing systems. Following any such election of direct rights, the nominal amount of the global Note will be reduced by the nominal amount of the Notes subject to the election.

PRO FORMA FINAL TERMS

Set out below is the form of Final Terms which will be completed for each Tranche issued under the Programme admitted to a Regulated Market.

[MIFID II PRODUCT GOVERNANCE / TARGET MARKET - Solely for the purposes of [the/each] manufacturer's product approval process, the target market assessment in respect of the Notes has led to the conclusion that: (i) the target market for the Notes is eligible counterparties and professional clients only, each as defined in Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "MiFID II"); and (ii) all channels for distribution of the Notes to eligible counterparties and professional clients are appropriate. Any person subsequently offering, selling or recommending the Notes (a "distributor") should take into consideration the manufacturer['s/s'] target market assessment; however, a distributor subject to MiFID II is responsible for undertaking its own target market assessment in respect of the Notes (by either adopting or refining the manufacturer['s/s'] target market assessment) and determining appropriate distribution channels.]

[PRIIPS REGULATION PROHIBITION OF SALES TO EEA RETAIL INVESTORS - The Notes are not intended to be offered, sold or otherwise made available to and should not be offered, sold or otherwise made available to any retail investor in the European Economic Area ("EEA"). For these purposes, a retail investor means a person who is one (or more) of: (i) a retail client as defined in point (11) of Article 4(1) of Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "MiFID II"); (ii) a customer within the meaning of Directive 2002/92/EC, as amended, where that customer would not qualify as a professional client as defined in point (10) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or (iii) not a qualified investor as defined in Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended including by Directive 2010/73/EU, or superseded, the "Prospectus Directive"). Consequently no key information document required by Regulation (EU) No 1286/2014 (as amended, the "PRIIPs Regulation") for offering or selling the Notes or otherwise making them available to retail investors in the EEA has been prepared and therefore offering or selling the Notes or otherwise making them available to any retail investor in the EEA may be unlawful under the PRIIPs Regulation.][1]

[**NOTIFICATION UNDER SECTION 309B(1)(C) OF THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES ACT (CHAPTER 289) OF SINGAPORE (**the **"SFA")** - [*To insert notice if classification of the Notes is not "prescribed capital markets products*[2]*", pursuant to Section 309B of the SFA*].[2]]

[THE NOTES ARE SUBJECT TO CONVERSION IN WHOLE OR IN PART – BY MEANS OF A TRANSACTION OR SERIES OF TRANSACTIONS AND IN ONE OR MORE STEPS – INTO COMMON SHARES OF BANK OF MONTREAL OR ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES UNDER SUBSECTION 39.2(2.3) OF THE *CANADA DEPOSIT INSURANCE CORPORATION ACT* (THE "CDIC ACT") AND TO VARIATION OR EXTINGUISHMENT IN CONSEQUENCE AND SUBJECT TO THE APPLICATION OF THE LAWS OF THE PROVINCE OF ONTARIO AND THE FEDERAL LAWS OF CANADA APPLICABLE THEREIN IN RESPECT OF THE OPERATION OF THE CDIC ACT WITH RESPECT TO THE NOTES.][3]

---

1 Legend to be included on front of the Final Terms if the Notes potentially constitute "packaged" products and no key information document will be prepared or the issuer wishes to prohibit offers to EEA retail investors for any other reason, in which case the selling restriction should be specified to be "Applicable".

2 Relevant Dealer(s) to consider whether it/they have received the necessary product classification from the Issuer prior to the launch of the offer, pursuant to Section 309B of the SFA.

3 Legend to be included on front of the Final Terms if the Notes are Bail-inable Notes.

Final Terms dated [ ]

Bank of Montreal
(the "Issuer")

LEI: NQQ6HPCNCCU6TUTQYE16

Issue of [Aggregate Nominal Amount of Tranche] [Description of Notes]

Senior Notes

under the U.S.$20,000,000,000 Note Issuance Programme

PART A – CONTRACTUAL TERMS

[Terms used herein shall be deemed to be defined as such for the purposes of the Terms and Conditions (the "**Conditions**") set forth in the Prospectus dated September 24, 2018 [and the supplement[s] dated ● and dated ●], including all documents incorporated by reference ([such Prospectus as so supplemented,] the "**Prospectus**") which constitutes a base prospectus for the purposes of the Prospectus Directive. As used herein, "**Prospectus Directive**" means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU, or superseded) and includes any relevant implementing measures in a Member State of the European Economic Area. This document constitutes the Final Terms of the Notes described herein for the purposes of Article 5.4 of the Prospectus Directive and must be read in conjunction with such Prospectus. Full information on the Issuer and the offer of the Notes is only available on the basis of the combination of these Final Terms and the Prospectus. The Prospectus has been published on the website of the National Storage Mechanism at *http://www.morningstar.co.uk/uk/NSM* under "Bank of Montreal".]

[Terms used herein shall be deemed to be defined as such for the purposes of the Terms and Conditions (the "**Conditions**") set forth in the Prospectus dated [original date], which are incorporated by reference in the Prospectus dated September 24, 2018 which constitutes a base prospectus for the purposes of the Prospectus Directive. As used herein, "**Prospectus Directive**" means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU, or superseded) and includes any relevant implementing measures in a Member State of the European Economic Area. This document constitutes the Final Terms of the Notes described herein for the purposes of Article 5.4 of the Prospectus Directive and must be read in conjunction with the Prospectus dated September 24, 2018, including the Conditions which are incorporated by reference in it [and the supplement[s] dated ● and dated ●], including all documents incorporated by reference ([such Prospectus as so supplemented,] the "**Prospectus**") which constitutes a base prospectus for the purposes of the Prospectus Directive. Full information on the Issuer and the offer of the Notes is only available on the basis of the combination of these Final Terms and the Prospectus. The Prospectus has been published on the website of the National Storage Mechanism at *http://www.morningstar.co.uk/uk/NSM* under "Bank of Montreal".]

1.	(i)	Series Number:	[	]
	(ii)	Tranche Number:	[	]

	(iii) Date on which the Notes will be consolidated and form a single Series:	[Not Applicable] [The Notes shall be consolidated and form a single Series and be interchangeable for trading purposes with the [ ] on [the Issue Date] [exchange of the temporary Global Note for interests in the permanent Global Note, as referred to in paragraph 24 below, which is expected to occur on or about [ ]].
2.	Specified Currency or Currencies:	[ ]
3.	Aggregate Nominal Amount:	
	[(i)] Series:	[ ]
	[(ii) Tranche:	[ ]]
4.	Issue Price:	[ ] per cent. of the Aggregate Nominal Amount [plus accrued interest from [ ]]
5.	[(i)] Specified Denomination(s):	[ ] [ ] [and integral multiples of [ ] in excess thereof up to and including [ ]. No Notes in definitive form will be issued with a denomination above [ ].]
	[(ii)] Calculation Amount:	[ ]
6.	[(i)] Issue Date:	[ ]
	[(ii)] Interest Commencement Date:	[ ] [Issue Date] [Not Applicable]
7.	Maturity Date:	[ ][, subject to adjustment for payment purposes only in accordance with the Modified Following Business Day Convention] [Interest Payment Date falling in or nearest to [ ]
8.	Interest Basis:	[[ ] per cent. Fixed Rate] [[ ] per cent. to be reset on [ ] [and [ ]] and every [ ] anniversary thereafter Fixed Rate Reset] []] per cent. Fixed Rate with a Step-Up] [subject to change as indicated in paragraph 10 below]

		[ ] month [currency] [LIBOR] [EURIBOR] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR] [ ] +/- [ ] per cent. Floating Rate] [subject to change as indicated in paragraph 10 below] [Range Accrual Notes] [Zero Coupon] (further particulars specified in paragraphs [14] [15] [16] below)
9.	Redemption Basis:	Subject to any purchase and cancellation or early redemption, the Notes will be redeemed on the Maturity Date at [par / [ ] per cent.] of their Nominal Amount
10.	Change of Interest:	[Not Applicable] [ ]
11.	Put/Call Options:	[Noteholder Put Option] (*Noteholders' Option not applicable to Bail-inable Notes*) [Bank Call Option] [(further particulars specified in paragraph[s] [18] [19] below)] [Not Applicable]
12.	Date(s) of [Board] approval for issuance of Notes obtained:	[ ] [Not Applicable]
13.	Bail-inable Notes:	[Yes] [No]

PROVISIONS RELATING TO INTEREST (IF ANY) PAYABLE

14.	**Fixed Rate Note Provisions**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	(i) Rate[(s)] of Interest:	[[ ] per cent. per annum payable in arrear on each Interest Payment Date] [As specified below, payable in arrear: Fixed Interest Period End Date: Rate of Interest (Step-Up) (per cent. per annum) [ ]: [ ] [ ]: [ ] [ ]: [ ] [ ]: [ ]]
	(ii) Interest Payment Date(s):	[[ ] [and [ ]] in each year, commencing [ ], up to and including the Maturity Date] [adjusted for [payment purposes only] [payment and interest accrual purposes] in accordance with the Business Day Convention specified in paragraph (iv) below]

(iii)	Adjusted Fixed Interest Periods:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
(iv)	Business Day Convention:	[Following Business Day Convention/Modified Following Business Day Convention/Preceding Business Day Convention] [Not Applicable]
(v)	Additional Business Centre(s):	[ ] [TARGET2] [Not Applicable]
(vi)	Fixed Coupon Amount[(s)]: *(applicable to Notes in definitive form only. For the calculation of interest on Notes issued in global form see Condition 4(a))*	[[ ] per [ ] Calculation Amount]] [Not Applicable]
(vii)	Broken Amount(s): *(applicable to Notes in definitive form only. For the calculation of interest on Notes issued in global form see Condition 4(a))*	[Not Applicable] [[ ] per Calculation Amount, payable on the Interest Payment Date falling [in/on] [ ]].
(viii)	Day Count Fraction:	[30/360] [Actual/Actual (ICMA)] [Actual/Actual (ISDA)] [Actual/360] [30E/360] [Actual/365 **(**Fixed)]
(ix)	Determination Dates:	[Not Applicable] [ ] in each year [ ]
(x)	Calculation Agent:	[[ ] shall be the Calculation Agent] [Not Applicable]
(xi)	Range Accrual:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	- Single Range Accrual Note:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
	- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
	- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
	- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
	- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
	- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
	- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
	- Constant Maturity Swap Spread:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	[- First Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
	- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Second Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
- Dual Range Accrual Note:	[Applicable][Not Applicable]
- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]

- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
- Constant Maturity Swap Spread:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
[- First Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Second Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]

	- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
	- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
(xii)	Minimum Rate of Interest:	[[ ] per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]
(xiii)	Maximum Rate of Interest:	[[ ] per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]
15.	**Fixed Rate Reset Note Provisions**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
(i)	Initial Rate of Interest:	[ ] per cent. per annum [payable [annually/semi annually/quarterly/monthly] in arrear]
(ii)	Interest Payment Date(s):	[ ] [and [ ]] in each year [from and including [ ]] [until and excluding [ ]]
(iii)	First Reset Date:	[ ]
(iv)	Second Reset Date:	[[ ]/Not Applicable]
(v)	Anniversary Date:	[[ ]/Not Applicable]
(vi)	Reset Determination Dates:	[ ]
(vii)	Reset Rate:	[[semi-annual][annualised][Mid-Swap Rate] [Benchmark Gilt Rate][Reference Bond]
(viii)	Swap Rate Period:	[[ ]/[Not Applicable]
(ix)	Screen Page:	[ICESWAP1]/[ICESWAP2]/[ICESWAP3]/ [ICESWAP4]/[ICESWAP5]/[ICESWAP6]/ [ ]/[Not Applicable
(x)	Fixed Leg:	[[semi-annual]/[annual] calculated on a[n Actual/365]/[30/360]/[ ] day count basis]/[Not Applicable]
(xi)	Floating Leg:	[[3]/[6]/[ ]-month [LIBOR]/[EURIBOR]/[ ] rate calcualted on an[Actual/365]/[Actual/360]/[ ] day count basis]/[Not Applicable]
(xii)	Margin(s):	[+/-] [ ] per cent. per annum

	(xiii) Fixed Coupon Amount[(s)] in respect of the period from (and including) the Interest Commencement Date up to (but excluding) the First Reset Date:	[[ ] per Calculation Amount]
	(xiv) Broken Amount(s):	[[ ] per Calculation Amount, payable on the Interest Payment Date falling [in/on] [ ]/[Not Applicable]
	(xv) Day Count Fraction:	[Actual/365] [Actual/365 (fixed)] [Actual/360] [30/360] [30E/360] [30E/360 (ISDA)] [Actual/Actual ICMA]
	(xvi) Determination Dates:	[[ ] in each year/Not Applicable]
	(xvii) Calculation Agent:	[ ]
	(xviii) Relevant Time	[11:00a.m.]/[ ]] [Not Applicable]
16.	**Floating Rate Note Provisions**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	(i) Specified Period(s):	[ ] [Not Applicable]
	(ii) Specified Interest Payment Dates:	[ ] in each year (up to and including the Maturity Date) [subject to adjustment in accordance with the Business Day Convention set out in (iv) below / not subject to any adjustment, as the Business Day Convention in (iv) below is specified to be No Adjustment] [Not Applicable]
	(iii) First Interest Payment Date:	[ ]
	(iv) Business Day Convention:	[Floating Rate Convention] [Following Business Day Convention] [Modified Following Business Day Convention] [Preceding Business Day Convention] [No Adjustment]
	(v) Additional Business Centre(s):	[ ] [TARGET2] [Not Applicable]
	(vi) Manner in which the Rate(s) of Interest is/are to be determined:	[ISDA Determination] [Screen Rate Determination]
	(vii) Calculation Agent:	[[ ] shall be the Calculation Agent] [Not Applicable]
	(viii) Screen Rate Determination:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]

–	Reference Rate:	[ ] month [[ ] LIBOR] [EURIBOR] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
–	Relevant Time:	[ ] [Not Applicable]
–	Relevant Financial Centre:	[London] [Brussels] [Hong Kong] [Not Applicable]
–	Interest Determination Date(s):	[ ]
–	Relevant Screen Page:	[Reuters page [ ]] [ ]
(ix)	ISDA Determination:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
–	Floating Rate Option:	[ ]
–	Designated Maturity:	[ ]
–	Reset Date:	[ ]
(x)	CMS Reference Rate Determination:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
–	Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
–	Reference Currency:	[Euro (EUR)] [Sterling (GB)] [U.S. dollar (USD)] [Canadian dollar (CAD)] [ ]
–	CMS Maturity:	[ ]
–	Relevant Time:	[ ]
–	Interest Determination Date(s):	[ ]
–	Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ] [Not Applicable]
(xi)	Linear Interpolation:	[Not Applicable] [Applicable – the Rate of Interest for the [long/short] [first/last] Interest Period shall be calculated using Linear Interpolation]
(xii)	Margin(s):	[[+/-][ ] per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]
(xiii)	Minimum Rate of Interest:	[[ ] per cent. per annum] [Zero per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]
(xiv)	Maximum Rate of Interest:	[[ ] per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]

(xv) Day Count Fraction:	[Actual/Actual (ISDA)] [Actual/Actual] [Actual/365 (Fixed)] [Actual/360] [30/360] [360/360] [Bond Basis] [30E/360] [Eurobond Basis] [30E/360 (ISDA)] [Actual/365 (Sterling)]
(xvi) Range accrual:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
- Single Range Accrual Note:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As provided in Condition 4(k)]
- Constant Maturity Swap Spread:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
[- First Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Second Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]

- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
- Dual Range Accrual Note:	[Applicable][Not Applicable]
- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Constant Maturity Swap Spread:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
[- First Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]

	- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
	- Second Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
	- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
	- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
	- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
	- Relevant Time:	[ ]
	- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]]
	- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
	- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
	- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
17.	**Zero Coupon Note Provisions**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
(i)	Accrual Method:	[Linear Accrual] [Compounding Accrual]
(ii)	Compounding basis:	[Annual] [Semi-annual] [ ] [Not Applicable]
(iii)	Accrual Yield:	[ ] per cent. per annum
(iv)	Reference Price:	[ ]
(v)	Day Count Fraction in relation to Early Redemption Amounts and late payment:	[30/360] [Actual/360] [Actual/365 (Fixed)] [Actual/365] [Actual/Actual] [Actual/Actual (ICMA)]
(vi)	Determination Dates:	[[ ] in each year] [Not Applicable]

PROVISIONS RELATING TO REDEMPTION

18.	**Bank Call Option**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
(i)	Optional Redemption Date(s):	[ ]

	(ii) Optional Redemption Amount(s) of each Note:	[[ ][, subject to adjustment for payment purposes only in accordance with the Modified Following Business Day Convention]]
	(iii) Redeemable in part:	[Yes] [No]
	(iv) If redeemable in part:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	(a) Minimum Redemption Amount:	[[ ] per Calculation Amount] [Not Applicable]
	(b) Maximum Redemption Amount:	[[ ] per Calculation Amount] [Not Applicable]
	(v) Notice period:	Minimum period: [15] [ ] days Maximum period: [30] [ ] days
19.	**Noteholder Put Option**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	(i) Optional Redemption Date(s):	[ ]
	(ii) Optional Redemption Amount(s) of each Note:	[ ] per Calculation Amount
	(iii) Notice period:	Minimum period: [15] [ ] days Maximum period: [30] [ ] days
20.	**Early Redemption for Illegality (Range Accrual Notes)**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	[(i) Minimum Period:	[ ] days
	(ii) Maximum Period:	[ ] days]
21.	**Bail-inable Notes - TLAC Disqualification Event Call:**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	[(i) Minimum Period:	[ ] days
	(ii) Maximum Period:	[ ] days]
22.	**Final Redemption Amount:**	[ ] per Calculation Amount
23.	**Early Redemption Amount**	
	Early Redemption Amount(s) payable on redemption for taxation reasons, [TLAC Disqualification Event] on event of default or, if applicable, for illegality:	[ ] [Condition 5(g)(iii) applies]

GENERAL PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO THE NOTES

24.	Form of Notes:	**Bearer Notes** [Temporary global Note exchangeable on or after [ ] for a permanent global Note which is exchangeable for Definitive Notes in the limited circumstances specified in Condition 2.] [Permanent global Note exchangeable for Definitive Notes in the limited circumstances specified in Condition 2.]
25.	New Global Note or Classic Global Note:	[New Global Note] [Classic Global Note]
26.	Additional Financial Centre(s):	[Not Applicable] [ ]
27.	Talons for future Coupons to be attached to Definitive Notes:	[No] [Yes. As the Notes have more than 27 coupon payments, Talons may be required if, on exchange into definitive form, more than 27 coupon payments are still to be made.]
28.	Branch of Account:	[Toronto] [London]
29.	Calculation Agent for purposes of Condition 6(f) (if other than the Agent):	[[ ] shall be the Calculation Agent] [Not Applicable]
30.	Calculation Agent for purposes of Condition 6(h) (RMB Notes) (if other than the Agent):	[[ ] shall be the Calculation Agent] [Not Applicable]
31.	RMB Settlement Centre:	[Hong Kong] [ ] [Not Applicable]
32.	Relevant Valuation Time for RMB Notes:	[Not Applicable] [[ ] in [ ]]
33.	Alternative Currency Payment:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable] [Alternative Currency: [ ]]

[**THIRD PARTY INFORMATION**

[ ] has been extracted from [ ]. The Issuer confirms that such information has been accurately reproduced and that, so far as it is aware, and is able to ascertain from information published by [ ], no facts have been omitted which would render the reproduced information inaccurate or misleading.]

Signed on behalf of Bank of Montreal:

By:

PART B – OTHER INFORMATION

1. LISTING AND ADMISSION TO TRADING

(i)	Listing/Admission to trading:	[Application has been made by the Issuer (or on its behalf) for the Notes to be admitted to trading on the Regulated Market of the London Stock Exchange]
	Date from which admission is expected to be effective:	[ ]
		[Tranche[s] [ ] of the Notes [is/are] already admitted to the Official List of the FCA and to trading on the London Stock Exchange's Regulated Market.]
(ii)	Estimate of total expenses related to admission:	[ ]

2. RATINGS

Ratings:	[The Notes have not been specifically rated.]
	The Notes to be issued [have been] [are expected to be] rated:
	[S&P Global Ratings, acting through S&P Global Ratings Canada, a business unit of S&P Global Canada Corp.: [ ]] [Moody's Canada Inc.: [ ]] [Fitch Ratings, Inc.: [ ]]

3. INTERESTS OF NATURAL AND LEGAL PERSONS INVOLVED IN THE ISSUE/OFFER

[Save for any fees payable to the [Managers/Purchaser], so far as the Issuer is aware, no person involved in the offer of the Notes has an interest material to the offer.] [The [Managers/Purchaser] and [their] [its] affiliates may have engaged, and may in the future engage, in investment banking and/or commercial banking transactions with, and may perform other services for, the Issuer and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business.] / [ ] / [Not Applicable]

4. [*Fixed Rate Notes only* – YIELD

Indication of yield:	[ ]]

5. OPERATIONAL INFORMATION

ISIN:	[ ]
Common Code:	[ ]
[CFI Code]:	[ ]
[FISN]:	[ ]
[WKN or any other relevant codes]:	[ ]

Any clearing system(s) other than Euroclear Bank SA/NV and Clearstream Banking S.A. and the relevant identification number(s):	[Not Applicable] [ ]
Names and addresses of additional Paying Agent(s) (if any) and if applicable a statement that it or they should be sole Paying Agent(s) for the Series:	[Not Applicable] [ ]
Intended to be held in a manner which would allow Eurosystem eligibility:	[Yes. Note that the designation "yes" simply means that the Notes are intended upon issue to be deposited with one of the ICSDs as common safekeeper and does not necessarily mean that the Notes will be recognised as eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra-day credit operations by the Eurosystem either upon issue or at any or all times during their life. Such recognition will depend upon the ECB being satisfied that Eurosystem eligibility criteria have been met.] [No. Whilst the designation is specified as "no" at the date of these Final Terms, should the Eurosystem eligibility criteria be amended in the future such that the Notes are capable of meeting them the Notes may then be deposited with one of the ICSDs as common safekeeper. Note that this does not necessarily mean that the Notes will then be recognised as eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra day credit operations by the Eurosystem at any time during their life. Such recognition will depend upon the ECB being satisfied that Eurosystem eligibility criteria have been met.]
	[Not Applicable]

6. DISTRIBUTION

(i)	United States of America selling restrictions:	Regulation S, Category 2, [TEFRA C] [TEFRA D] [TEFRA Rules not applicable]
(ii)	Canadian selling restriction:	[Canadian Sales Permitted] [Canadian Sales Not Permitted.]
(iii)	Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable] *(The Notes may constitute "packaged" products and no key information document will be prepared or the Issuer may wish to prohibit offers to EEA retail investors for any other reason; in each such case "Applicable" should be specified)*

(iv) Prohibition of Sales to Belgian Consumers: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

7. USE OF PROCEEDS [As specified in the Prospectus] [ ]

8. BENCHMARKS Amounts payable under the Notes will be calculated by reference to [ ] which is provided by [ ]. As at [ ], [ ] [appears/does not appear] on the register of administrators and benchmarks established and maintained by the European Securities and Markets Authority pursuant to Article 36 of Regulation (EU) 2016/1011 (the "**Benchmarks Regulation**"). [As far as the Issuer is aware, the transitional provisions of Article 51 of the Benchmarks Regulation apply, such that [ ] is not currently required to obtain authorisation or registration.]]

FORM OF PRICING SUPPLEMENT FOR PSM NOTES

Set out below is the form of Pricing Supplement which will be completed for each Tranche of PSM Notes, whatever the denomination of those Notes, issued under the Programme.

NO PROSPECTUS IS REQUIRED IN ACCORDANCE WITH DIRECTIVE 2003/71/EC AS AMENDED (THE "PROSPECTUS DIRECTIVE") FOR THE ISSUE OF NOTES DESCRIBED BELOW.

[MIFID II PRODUCT GOVERNANCE / TARGET MARKET - Solely for the purposes of [the/each] manufacturer's product approval process, the target market assessment in respect of the Notes has led to the conclusion that: (i) the target market for the Notes is eligible counterparties and professional clients only, each as defined in Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "MiFID II"); and (ii) all channels for distribution of the Notes to eligible counterparties and professional clients are appropriate. Any person subsequently offering, selling or recommending the Notes (a "distributor") should take into consideration the manufacturer['s/s'] target market assessment; however, a distributor subject to MiFID II is responsible for undertaking its own target market assessment in respect of the Notes (by either adopting or refining the manufacturer['s/s'] target market assessment) and determining appropriate distribution channels.]

[PRIIPS REGULATION PROHIBITION OF SALES TO EEA RETAIL INVESTORS - The Notes are not intended to be offered, sold or otherwise made available to and should not be offered, sold or otherwise made available to any retail investor in the European Economic Area ("EEA"). For these purposes, a retail investor means a person who is one (or more) of: (i) a retail client as defined in point (11) of Article 4(1) of Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "MiFID II"); (ii) a customer within the meaning of Directive 2002/92/EC, as amended, where that customer would not qualify as a professional client as defined in point (10) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or (iii) not a qualified investor as defined in Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended including by Directive 2010/73/EU, or superseded, the "Prospectus Directive"). Consequently no key information document required by Regulation (EU) No 1286/2014 (as amended, the "PRIIPs Regulation") for offering or selling the Notes or otherwise making them available to retail investors in the EEA has been prepared and therefore offering or selling the Notes or otherwise making them available to any retail investor in the EEA may be unlawful under the PRIIPs Regulation.][1]

[**NOTIFICATION UNDER SECTION 309B(1)(C) OF THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES ACT (CHAPTER 289) OF SINGAPORE (**the **"SFA")** - [*To insert notice if classification of the Notes is not "prescribed capital markets products*[2]*", pursuant to Section 309B of the SFA*].[2]]

---

[1] Legend to be included on front of the Pricing Supplement if the Notes potentially constitute "packaged" products and no key information document will be prepared or the issuer wishes to prohibit offers to EEA retail investors for any other reason, in which case the selling restriction should be specified to be "Applicable".

[2] Relevant Dealer(s) to consider whether it/they have received the necessary product classification from the Issuer prior to the launch of the offer, pursuant to Section 309B of the SFA.

[THE NOTES ARE SUBJECT TO CONVERSION IN WHOLE OR IN PART – BY MEANS OF A TRANSACTION OR SERIES OF TRANSACTIONS AND IN ONE OR MORE STEPS – INTO COMMON SHARES OF BANK OF MONTREAL OR ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES UNDER SUBSECTION 39.2(2.3) OF THE *CANADA DEPOSIT INSURANCE CORPORATION ACT* (THE "CDIC ACT") AND TO VARIATION OR EXTINGUISHMENT IN CONSEQUENCE AND SUBJECT TO THE APPLICATION OF THE LAWS OF THE PROVINCE OF ONTARIO AND THE FEDERAL LAWS OF CANADA APPLICABLE THEREIN IN RESPECT OF THE OPERATION OF THE CDIC ACT WITH RESPECT TO THE NOTES.][3]

Pricing Supplement dated [ ]

Bank of Montreal
(the "Issuer")

LEI: NQQ6HPCNCCU6TUTQYE16

Issue of [Aggregate Nominal Amount of Tranche] [Description of Notes]

Senior Notes

under the U.S.$20,000,000,000 Note Issuance Programme

PART A – CONTRACTUAL TERMS

Any person making or intending to make an offer of the Notes may only do so in circumstances in which no obligation arises for the Issuer or any Dealer to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive, in each case, in relation to such offer.

[Terms used herein shall be deemed to be defined as such for the purposes of the Terms and Conditions (the "**Conditions**") set forth in the Prospectus dated September 24, 2018 [and the supplementary listing particulars dated [ ]], including all documents incorporated by reference ([such Prospectus as so supplemented,] the "**Prospectus**") which constitutes listing particulars for the purposes of the listing rules of the Financial Conduct Authority. This document constitutes the Pricing Supplement of the Notes described herein and must be read in conjunction with such Prospectus. Full information on the Issuer and the offer of the Notes is only available on the basis of the combination of this Pricing Supplement and the Prospectus. The Prospectus has been published on the website of the National Storage Mechanism at *http://www.morningstar.co.uk/uk/NSM* under "Bank of Montreal".]

[*The following alternative language applies if the first tranche of an issue which is being increased was issued under an Offering Circular with an earlier date.*

[Terms used herein shall be deemed to be defined as such for the purposes of the Terms and Conditions (the "**Conditions**") set forth in the Prospectus dated [original date] [which is incorporated by

---

[3] Legend to be included on front of the Pricing Supplement if the Notes are Bail-inable Notes.

reference in the Prospectus dated [current date]]. This document constitutes the Pricing Supplement of the Notes and must be read in conjunction with the Prospectus dated September 24, 2018 including the Conditions which are incorporated by reference in it [and the supplementary listing particulars dated [ ], including all documents incorporated by reference, ([such Prospectus as so supplemented,] the "**Prospectus**") which constitutes listing particulars for the purposes of the listing rules of the Financial Conduct Authority.] Full information on the Issuer and the offer of the Notes is only available on the basis of the combination of this Pricing Supplement and the Prospectus. The Prospectus has been published on the website of the National Storage Mechanism at *http://www.morningstar.co.uk/uk/NSM* under "Bank of Montreal".]

[*Include whichever of the following apply or specify as "Not Applicable" (N/A). Note that the numbering should remain as set out below, even if "Not Applicable" is indicated for individual paragraphs or sub-paragraphs. Italics denote guidance for completing the Pricing Supplement*.]

1.	(i)	Series Number:	[ ]
	(ii)	Tranche Number:	[ ]
	(iii)	Date on which the Notes will be consolidated and form a single Series:	[Not Applicable] [The Notes shall be consolidated and form a single Series and be interchangeable for trading purposes with the [ ] on [the Issue Date] [exchange of the Temporary global Note for interests in the permanent global Note, as referred to in paragraph 24 below, which is expected to occur on or about [ ]].
2.	Specified Currency or Currencies:		[ ]
3.	Aggregate Nominal Amount:		
	[(i)]	Series:	[ ]
	[(ii)	Tranche:	[ ]]
4.	Issue Price:		[ ] per cent. of the Aggregate Nominal Amount [plus accrued interest from [ ]]
5.	[(i)] Specified Denomination(s):		[ ] [ ] [and integral multiples of [ ] in excess thereof up to and including [ ]. No Notes in definitive form will be issued with a denomination above [ ].]
	[(ii)] Calculation Amount:		[ ]
6.	[(i)]	Issue Date:	[ ]

	[(ii)] Interest Commencement Date:	[ ] [Issue Date] [Not Applicable]
7.	Maturity Date:	[ ][, subject to adjustment for payment purposes only in accordance with the Modified Following Business Day Convention] [[Interest Payment Date falling in or nearest to [ ]
8.	Interest Basis:	[[ ] per cent. Fixed Rate] [[ ] per cent. to be reset on [ ] [and [ ]] and every [ ] anniversary thereafter Fixed Rate Reset] [[ ] per cent. Fixed Rate with a Step-up] [subject to change as indicated in paragraph 10 below] [ ] month [currency] [LIBOR] [EURIBOR] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR] [ ] +/- [ ] per cent. Floating Rate] [subject to change as indicated in paragraph 10 below] [Range Accrual Notes] [Zero Coupon] (further particulars specified in paragraphs [14] [15] [16] below)
9.	Redemption Basis:	Subject to any purchase and cancellation or early redemption, the Notes will be redeemed on the Maturity Date at [par / [ ] per cent.] of their Nominal Amount
10.	Change of Interest:	[Not Applicable] [ ]
11.	Put/Call Options:	[Noteholder Put Option] (*Noteholders' Option not applicable to Bail-inable Notes*) [Bank Call Option] [(further particulars specified in paragraph[s] [18] [19] below)]
12.	Date(s) of [Board] approval for issuance of Notes obtained:	[ ] [Not Applicable]
13.	Bail-inable Notes:	[Yes] [No]

PROVISIONS RELATING TO INTEREST (IF ANY) PAYABLE

14.	**Fixed Rate Note Provisions**	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	(i) Rate[(s)] of Interest:	[[ ] per cent. per annum payable in arrear on each Interest Payment Date]

		[As specified below, payable in arrear: Fixed Interest Period End Date / Rate of Interest (Step-Up) (per cent. per annum) [ ] / [ ] [ ] / [ ] [ ] / [ ] [ ] / [ ]]
(ii)	Interest Payment Date(s):	[[ ] [and [ ]] in each year, commencing [ ], up to and including the Maturity Date] [adjusted for [payment purposes only] [payment and interest accrual purposes] in accordance with the Business Day Convention specified in paragraph (iv) below]
(iii)	Adjusted Fixed Interest Periods:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
(iv)	Business Day Convention:	[Following Business Day Convention/Modified Following Business Day Convention/Preceding Business Day Convention] [Not Applicable]
(v)	Additional Business Centre(s):	[ ] [TARGET2] [Not Applicable]
(vi)	Fixed Coupon Amount[(s)]: *(applicable to Notes in definitive form only. For the calculation of interest on Notes issued in global form see Condition 4(a))*	[[ ] per [ ] Calculation Amount] [Not Applicable]
(vii)	Broken Amount(s): *(applicable to Notes in definitive form only. For the calculation of interest on Notes issued in global form see Condition 4(a))*	[Not Applicable] [[ ] per Calculation Amount, payable on the Interest Payment Date falling [in/on] [ ]].
(viii)	Day Count Fraction:	[30/360] [Actual/Actual (ICMA)] [Actual/Actual (ISDA)] [Actual/360] [30E/360] [Actual/365 **(**Fixed)]
(ix)	Determination Dates:	[Not Applicable] [ ] in each year [ ]
(x)	Calculation Agent:	[[ ] shall be the Calculation Agent] [Not Applicable]

(xi) Range Accrual: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

- Single Range Accrual Note: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

- Range Accrual Reference Rate: [EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]

- Specified Currency: [ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

- Specified Maturity: [ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]

- Relevant Screen Page: [ ]

- Relevant Time: [ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]

- Relevant Financial Centre: [ ]

- Rate Cut Off Date: [ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]

- Constant Maturity Swap Spread: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

[- First Reference Rate: Constant Maturity Swap

- Specified Currency: [ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

- Specified Maturity: [ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]

- Relevant Screen Page: [ ]

- Relevant Time: [ ]

- Relevant Financial Centre: [ ]

- Second Reference Rate: Constant Maturity Swap

- Specified Currency: [ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

- Specified Maturity: [ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]

- Relevant Screen Page: [ ]

- Relevant Time: [ ]

- Relevant Financial Centre: [ ]]

- Rate Cut Off Date: [ ] [As provided in Condition 4(k)]

- Cap: [[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable]

[For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]

- Floor: [[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable]

[For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]

- Dual Range Accrual Note: [Applicable][Not Applicable]

- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
- Constant Maturity Swap Spread:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]

[- First Reference Rate: Constant Maturity Swap

- Specified Currency: [ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

- Specified Maturity: [ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]

- Relevant Screen Page: [ ]

- Relevant Time: [ ]

- Relevant Financial Centre: [ ]

- Second Reference Rate: Constant Maturity Swap

- Specified Currency: [ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

- Specified Maturity: [ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]

- Relevant Screen Page: [ ]

- Relevant Time: [ ]

- Relevant Financial Centre: [ ]]

- Rate Cut Off Date: [ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]

- Cap: [[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable]

[For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]

- Floor: [[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable]

[For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]

(xii) Minimum Rate of Interest: [[ ] per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]

(xiii) Maximum Rate of Interest: [[ ] per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]

15. **Fixed Rate Reset Note Provisions** [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

(i) Initial Rate of Interest: [ ] per cent. per annum [payable [annually/semi annually/quarterly/monthly] in arrear]

(ii) Interest Payment Date(s): [ ] [and [ ]] in each year [from and including [ ]] [until and excluding [ ]]

(iii) First Reset Date: [ ]

(iv) Second Reset Date: [[ ]/Not Applicable]

(v) Anniversary Date: [[ ]/Not Applicable]

(vi) Reset Determination Dates: [ ]

(vii)	Reset Rate:	[[semi-annual][annualised][Mid-Swap Rate] [Benchmark Gilt Rate][Reference Bond]
(viii)	Swap Rate Period:	[[ ]/[Not Applicable]
(ix)	Screen Page:	[ICESWAP1]/[ICESWAP2]/[ICESWAP3]/ [ICESWAP4]/[ICESWAP5]/[ICESWAP6]/ [ ]/[Not Applicable
(x)	Fixed Leg:	[[semi-annual]/[annual] calculated on a[n Actual/365]/[30/360]/[ ] day count basis]/[Not Applicable]
(xi)	Floating Leg:	[[3]/[6]/[ ]-month [LIBOR]/[EURIBOR]/[ ] rate calcualted on an[Actual/365]/[Actual/360]/[ ] day count basis]/[Not Applicable]
(xii)	Margin(s):	[+/-] [ ] per cent. per annum
(xiii)	Fixed Coupon Amount[(s)] in respect of the period from (and including) the Interest Commencement Date up to (but excluding) the First Reset Date:	[[ ] per Calculation Amount]
(xiv)	Broken Amount(s):	[[ ] per Calculation Amount, payable on the Interest Payment Date falling [in/on] [ ]/[Not Applicable]
(xv)	Day Count Fraction:	[Actual/365] [Actual/365 (fixed)] [Actual/360] [30/360] [30E/360] [30E/360 (ISDA)] [Actual/Actual ICMA]
(xvi)	Determination Dates:	[[ ] in each year/Not Applicable]
(xvii)	Calculation Agent:	[ ]
(xviii)	Relevant Time	[11:00a.m.]/[ ]] [Not Applicable]

16. **Floating Rate Note Provisions** [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

(i)	Specified Period(s):	[ ] [Not Applicable]
(ii)	Specified Interest Payment Dates:	[ ] in each year [subject to adjustment in accordance with the Business Day Convention set out in (iv) below / not subject to any adjustment, as the Business Day Convention in (iv) below is specified to be No Adjustment] [Not Applicable]
(iii)	First Interest Payment Date:	[ ]

(iv)	Business Day Convention:	[Floating Rate Convention] [Following Business Day Convention] [Modified Following Business Day Convention] [Preceding Business Day Convention] [No Adjustment]
(v)	Additional Business Centre(s):	[ ] [TARGET2] [Not Applicable]
(vi)	Manner in which the Rate(s) of Interest is/are to be determined:	[ISDA Determination] [Screen Rate Determination]
(vii)	Calculation Agent:	[[ ] shall be the Calculation Agent] [Not Applicable]
(viii)	Screen Rate Determination:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	– Reference Rate:	[ ] month [[ ] LIBOR] [EURIBOR] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
	– Relevant Time:	[ ] [Not Applicable]
	– Relevant Financial Centre:	[London] [Brussels] [Hong Kong] [Not Applicable]
	– Interest Determination Date(s):	[ ]
	– Relevant Screen Page:	[Reuters page [ ]] [ ]
(ix)	ISDA Determination:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	– Floating Rate Option:	[ ]
	– Designated Maturity:	[ ]
	– Reset Date:	[ ]
(x)	CMS Reference Rate Determination:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	– Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
	– Reference Currency:	[Euro (EUR)] [Sterling (GB)] [U.S. dollar (USD)] [Canadian dollars (CAD)] [ ]
	– CMS Maturity:	[ ]
	– Relevant Time:	[ ]
	– Interest Determination Date(s):	[ ]

– Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ] [Not Applicable]
(xi) Linear Interpolation:	[Not Applicable] [Applicable – the Rate of Interest for the [long/short] [first/last] Interest Period shall be calculated using Linear Interpolation]
(xii) Margin(s):	[[+/-][ ] per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]
(xiii) Minimum Rate of Interest:	[[ ] per cent. per annum] [Zero per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]
(xiv) Maximum Rate of Interest:	[[ ] per cent. per annum] [Not Applicable]
(xv) Day Count Fraction:	[Actual/Actual (ISDA)] [Actual/Actual] [Actual/365 (Fixed)] [Actual/360] [30/360] [360/360] [Bond Basis] [30E/360] [Eurobond Basis] [30E/360 (ISDA)] [Actual/365 (Sterling)]
(xvi) Range accrual:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
- Single Range Accrual Note:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
- Constant Maturity Swap Spread:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
[- First Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]

- Second Reference Rate:	Constant Maturity Swap
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]
- Dual Range Accrual Note:	[Applicable][Not Applicable]
- Range Accrual Reference Rate:	[EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]
- Specified Currency:	[ ] [As set out in item 2 above]
- Specified Maturity:	[ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]
- Relevant Screen Page:	[ ]
- Relevant Time:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]
- Relevant Financial Centre:	[ ]
- Rate Cut Off Date:	[ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]
- Cap:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]
- Floor:	[[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable] [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]

- Range Accrual Reference Rate: [EURIBOR] [LIBOR] [Constant Maturity Swap] [CDOR] [CNH HIBOR] [HIBOR]

  - Specified Currency: [ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

  - Specified Maturity: [ ] [month[s]] [year[s]]

  - Relevant Screen Page: [ ]

  - Relevant Time: [ ] [As specified in Condition 4(c)(ii)]

  - Relevant Financial Centre: [ ]

- Constant Maturity Swap Spread: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

  [- First Reference Rate: Constant Maturity Swap

    - Specified Currency: [ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

    - Specified Maturity: [ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]

    - Relevant Screen Page: [ ]

    - Relevant Time: [ ]

    - Relevant Financial Centre: [ ]

  - Second Reference Rate: Constant Maturity Swap

    - Specified Currency: [ ] [As set out in item 2 above]

    - Specified Maturity: [ ] [months[s]] [year[s]]

    - Relevant Screen Page: [ ]

    - Relevant Time: [ ]

    - Relevant Financial Centre: [ ]]

- Rate Cut Off Date: [ ] [As specified in Condition 4(k)]

- Cap: [[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable]

  [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [less than or equal to][less than] shall apply.]

- Floor: [[ ] per cent. per annum [in respect of the Interest Period ending [ ]]] [Not Applicable]

  [For the purposes of the definition of "N1" in Condition 4(k), [greater than or equal to][greater than] shall apply.]

17. **Zero Coupon Note Provisions** [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

(i) Accrual Method: [Linear Accrual] [Compounding Accrual]

(ii) Compounding basis: [Annual] [Semi-annual] [ ] [Not Applicable]

(iii) Accrual Yield: [ ] per cent. per annum

(iv) Reference Price: [ ]

(v) Day Count Fraction in relation to Early Redemption Amounts and late payment: [30/360]
[Actual/360]
[Actual/365 (Fixed)]
[Actual/365]
[Actual/Actual]
[Actual/Actual (ICMA)]

(vi) Determination Dates: [[ ] in each year] [Not Applicable]

PROVISIONS RELATING TO REDEMPTION

18. **Bank Call Option** [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

(i) Optional Redemption Date(s): [[ ][, subject to adjustment for payment purposes only in accordance with the Modified Following Business Day Convention]]

(ii) Optional Redemption Amount(s) of each Note: [ ] per Calculation Amount

(iii) Redeemable in part: [Yes] [No]

(iv) If redeemable in part: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

(a) Minimum Redemption Amount: [[ ] per Calculation Amount] [Not Applicable]

(b) Maximum Redemption Amount: [[ ] per Calculation Amount] [Not Applicable]

(v) Notice period: Minimum period: [15] [ ] days
Maximum period: [30] [ ] days

19. **Noteholder Put Option** [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

(i) Optional Redemption Date(s): [ ]

(ii) Optional Redemption Amount(s) of each Note: [ ] per Calculation Amount

(iii) Notice period: Minimum period: [15] [ ] days
Maximum period: [30] [ ] days

20. **Early Redemption for Illegality (Range Accrual Notes)** [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

[(i) Minimum Period: [ ] days

	(ii)	Maximum Period:	[ ] days]
21.	**Bail-inable Notes - TLAC Disqualification Event Call:**		[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
	[(i)	Minimum Period:	[ ] days
	(ii)	Maximum Period:	[ ] days]
22.	**Final Redemption Amount:**		[ ] per Calculation Amount
23.	**Early Redemption Amount**		
	Early Redemption Amount(s) payable on redemption for taxation reasons, [TLAC Disqualification Event] on event of default or, if applicable for illegality:		[ ] [Condition 5(g)(iii) applies]

GENERAL PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO THE NOTES

24.	Form of Notes:	**Bearer Notes** [Temporary global Note exchangeable on or after [ ] for a permanent global Note which is exchangeable for Definitive Notes in the limited circumstances specified in Condition 2.] [Permanent global Note exchangeable for Definitive Notes in the limited circumstances specified in Condition 2.]
25.	New Global Note or Classic Global Note:	[New Global Note] [Classic Global Note]
26.	Additional Financial Centre(s):	[Not Applicable] [ ]
27.	Talons for future Coupons to be attached to Definitive Notes:	[No] [Yes. As the Notes have more than 27 coupon payments, Talons may be required if, on exchange into definitive form, more than 27 coupon payments are still to be made.]
28.	Branch of Account:	[Toronto] [London]
29.	Calculation Agent for purposes of Condition 6(f) (if other than the Agent):	[[ ] shall be the Calculation Agent] [Not Applicable]

30.	Calculation Agent for purposes of Condition 6(h) (RMB Notes) (if other than the Agent):	[[ ] shall be the Calculation Agent] [Not Applicable]
31.	RMB Settlement Centre:	[Hong Kong] [ ] [Not Applicable]
32.	Relevant Valuation Time for RMB Notes:	[Not Applicable] [[ ] in [ ]]
33	Alternative Currency Payment:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable] [Alternative Currency: [ ]]

[**THIRD PARTY INFORMATION**

[ ] has been extracted from [ ]. The Issuer confirms that such information has been accurately reproduced and that, so far as it is aware, and is able to ascertain from information published by [ ], no facts have been omitted which would render the reproduced information inaccurate or misleading.]

Signed on behalf of Bank of Montreal:

By:

PART B – OTHER INFORMATION

1. LISTING AND ADMISSION TO TRADING

(i)	Listing/Admission to trading:	[Application has been made by the Issuer (or on its behalf) for the Notes to be admitted to trading on the Professional Securities Market of the London Stock Exchange]
	Date from which admission is expected to be effective:	[ ] [Tranche[s] [ ] of the Notes [is/are] already admitted to the Official List of the FCA and to trading on the London Stock Exchange's Regulated Market.]
(ii)	Estimate of total expenses related to admission:	[ ]

2. RATINGS

Ratings:	[The Notes have not been specifically rated.] The Notes to be issued [have been] [are expected to be] rated: [S&P Global Ratings, acting through S&P Global Ratings Canada, a business unit of S&P Global Canada Corp.: [ ]] [Moody's Canada Inc.: [ ]] [Fitch Ratings, Inc.: [ ]]

3. INTERESTS OF NATURAL AND LEGAL PERSONS INVOLVED IN THE ISSUE/OFFER

[Save for any fees payable to the [Managers/Purchaser], so far as the Issuer is aware, no person involved in the offer of the Notes has an interest material to the offer.] [The [Managers/Purchaser] and [their] [its] affiliates may have engaged, and may in the future engage, in investment banking and/or commercial banking transactions with, and may perform other services for, the Issuer and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business.] / [ ] / [Not Applicable]

4. [*Fixed Rate Notes only* – YIELD

Indication of yield:	[ ]]

5. OPERATIONAL INFORMATION

ISIN:	[ ]
Common Code:	[ ]
[CFI Code}:	[ ]

[FISN]:	[ ]
[WKN or any other relevant codes]:	[ ]
Any clearing system(s) other than Euroclear Bank SA/NV and Clearstream Banking S.A. and the relevant identification number(s):	[Not Applicable] [ ]
Names and addresses of additional Paying Agent(s) (if any) and if applicable a statement that it or they should be sole Paying Agent(s) for the Series:	[Not Applicable] [ ]
Intended to be held in a manner which would allow Eurosystem eligibility:	[Yes] [No] [Note that the designation "Yes" simply means that the Notes are intended upon issue to be deposited with one of the ICSDs as common safekeeper and does not necessarily mean that the Notes will be recognised as eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra-day credit operations by the Eurosystem either upon issue or at any or all times during their life. Such recognition will depend upon the ECB being satisfied that Eurosystem eligibility criteria have been met.] [While the designation is specified as "No" at the date of this Pricing Supplement, should the Eurosystem eligibility criteria be amended in the future such that the Notes are capable of meeting them the Notes may then be deposited with one of the ICSDs as common safekeeper. Note that this does not necessarily mean that the Notes will then be recognised as eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra day credit operations by the Eurosystem at any time during their life. Such recognition will depend upon the ECB being satisfied that Eurosystem eligibility criteria have been met.] [Not Applicable]

6. DISTRIBUTION

(i)	United States of America selling restrictions:	Regulation S, Category 2, [TEFRA C] [TEFRA D] [TEFRA Rules not applicable]
(ii)	Canadian selling restriction:	[Canadian Sales Permitted] [Canadian Sales Not Permitted.]

(iii)	Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable] *(The Notes may constitute "packaged" products and no key information document will be prepared or the Issuer may wish to prohibit offers to EEA retail investors for any other reason; in each such case "Applicable" should be specified)*
(iv)	Prohibition of Sales to Belgian Consumers:	[Applicable] [Not Applicable]
7.	**USE OF PROCEEDS**	[As specified in the Prospectus] [ ]
8.	**BENCHMARKS**	Amounts payable under the Notes will be calculated by reference to [ ] which is provided by [ ]. As at [ ], [ ] [appears/does not appear] on the register of administrators and benchmarks established and maintained by the European Securities and Markets Authority pursuant to Article 36 of Regulation (EU) 2016/1011 (the "**Benchmarks Regulation**"). [As far as the Issuer is aware, the transitional provisions of Article 51 of the Benchmarks Regulation apply, such that [ ] is not currently required to obtain authorisation or registration.]]

TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE NOTES

The following are the Terms and Conditions of the Notes which, subject to completion in accordance with the provisions of Part A of the applicable Final Terms or, in the case of PSM Notes, Part A of the applicable Pricing Supplement, will apply to Notes issued under the Programme and will be attached to, endorsed upon or incorporated by reference into each global Note and each definitive Note. Part A of the applicable Final Terms (or the relevant provisions thereof) or, in the case of PSM Notes, Part A of the applicable Pricing Supplement (or the relevant provisions thereof) will be endorsed on, or attached to, each global Note and each definitive Note. All capitalised terms that are not defined in these Terms and Conditions will have the meanings given to them in the applicable Final Terms or, in the case of PSM Notes, the applicable Pricing Supplement.

The Terms and Conditions applicable to any particular Tranche of Notes which is the subject of a Drawdown Prospectus or, in the case of PSM Notes, Drawdown Listing Particulars, will be the Terms and Conditions as supplemented, amended and/or replaced to the extent described in such Drawdown Prospectus or Drawdown Listing Particulars, as the case may be.

This Note is one of a Series of Notes (the "***Notes***"), which expression shall mean (i) in relation to any Notes represented by a Note in global form (a "***Global Note***"), units of the lowest Specified Denomination or Calculation Amount comprising or forming part of the Specified Denomination, if any, in the Specified Currency of the Notes, (ii) Definitive Notes (defined below) issued in exchange for a permanent Global Note, and (iii) any Global Note issued subject to, and with the benefit of, an Agency Agreement amended and restated as of September 24, 2018 (and as may be further amended or supplemented from time to time in accordance with the terms thereof) (the "***Agency Agreement***") and made between the Bank, HSBC Bank plc as issuing and principal paying agent (the "***Agent***", which expression shall include any successor as agent) and the other paying agent named therein (together with the Agent, the "***Paying Agents***", which expression shall include any additional or successor paying agents).

As used herein, "***Series***" means all Notes which are denominated in the same currency and which have the same Maturity Date, Interest Basis, Redemption Basis and Interest Payment Dates (if any) (all as indicated in the applicable Final Terms) and the terms of which (save for the Issue Date, the Interest Commencement Date and/or the Issue Price (as indicated as aforesaid)) are otherwise identical and the expressions "***Notes of the relevant Series***" and "***holders of Notes of the relevant Series***" and related expressions shall be construed accordingly. As used herein, "***Tranche***" means all Notes of the same Series with the same Issue Date. The Bank may create and issue additional Tranches in accordance with Condition 16 herein. The final terms for this Note (or the relevant provisions thereof) are set out in Part A of the Final Terms attached to or endorsed on this Note or, if the Note is admitted to trading on the Professional Securities Market (a "**PSM Note**") Part A of the Pricing Supplement attached to or endorsed on this Note, which completes the Terms and Conditions (the "***Conditions***"). References to the "***applicable Final Terms***" are to Part A of the Final Terms (or the relevant provisions thereof) attached to or endorsed on this Note and any references in the Conditions to "applicable Final Terms" shall be deemed to include a reference to the applicable Pricing Supplement where relevant.

A copy of the Agency Agreement (which contains the forms of Final Terms) is available for inspection during normal business hours and upon reasonable notice at the specified office of the Agent in London, England and for collection without charge from the Treasury Department of the Bank, 100 King Street West, 1 First Canadian Place, 10th Floor, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, M5X 1A1. Copies of Final Terms for Notes which are either admitted to trading on the London Stock Exchange's Main Market or Professional Securities Market or offered in the United Kingdom in circumstances where a prospectus is required to be published in accordance with Directive 2003/71/EC, as amended (the "***Prospectus Directive***"), can be viewed on the website of the National Storage Mechanism at *http://www.morningstar.co.uk/uk/NSM* under "Bank of Montreal". Copies of each Final Terms relating to Notes which are admitted to trading on any

other regulated market ("***Regulated Market***") for the purposes of Directive 2014/65/EU, as amended, in the European Economic Area in circumstances where a prospectus is required to be published under the Prospectus Directive will be made available for viewing in accordance with Article 14.2 of the Prospectus Directive and the rules and regulations of the relevant Regulated Market. Final Terms for Notes that are not offered to the public or admitted to trading on a Regulated Market in the European Economic Area in circumstances requiring a prospectus in accordance with the Prospectus Directive will only be obtainable by a Noteholder.

The holders of the Notes (the "***Noteholders***", which expression shall, in relation to any Notes represented by a Global Note, be construed as provided in Condition 1 herein), the holders of the coupons (the "***Couponholders***") are deemed to have notice of, and are entitled to the benefit of, all the provisions of the Agency Agreement and the applicable Final Terms, which are binding on them.

Words and expressions defined in the Agency Agreement or used in the applicable Final Terms shall have the same meanings where used in these Terms and Conditions unless the context otherwise requires or unless otherwise stated.

References herein to "**RMB Notes**" are to Notes denominated in Renminbi. References herein to "**Renminbi**", "**RMB**" and "**CNY**" are to the lawful currency of the People's Republic of China (the "**PRC**") which, for the purposes of these Terms and Conditions, excludes the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region of the PRC, the Macau Special Administrative Region of the PRC and Taiwan.

1. Form, Title and Transfer

The Notes are issued in bearer form.

Bearer Notes of this Series are deposited on or prior to the relevant Issue Date (i) if the Notes are issued in new global note ("***NGN***") form as specified in the applicable Final Terms, with a common safekeeper (the "***Common Safekeeper***") and (ii) if the Notes are issued in classic global note ("***CGN***") form as specified in the applicable Final Terms, with a common depositary for Euroclear Bank SA/NV ("***Euroclear***") and Clearstream Banking S.A. ("***Clearstream, Luxembourg***"). Unless specified otherwise in the applicable Final Terms, the Notes will be issued in CGN form. Any reference herein to Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg (or the "***clearing systems***") shall, whenever the context so permits, be deemed to include a reference to any additional or alternative clearing system approved by the Bank and the Agent (including SIX SIS AG ("***SIX SIS***")).

This Note is a Fixed Rate Note, a Fixed Rate Note with a Step-Up, a Floating Rate Note, a Zero Coupon Note or a Range Accrual Note or any appropriate combination thereof, depending upon the Interest Basis specified in the applicable Final Terms.

Notes in definitive form ("***Definitive Notes***") will be serially numbered in the Specified Currency and the Specified Denomination(s) and, if applicable, integral multiples of the Calculation Amount(s) in excess of the lowest Specified Denomination up to but excluding an integral multiple of the highest Specified Denomination. Interest bearing Definitive Notes will have interest coupons ("***Coupons***") and, if applicable, talons for further coupons ("***Talons***") attached. Any reference herein to Coupons shall, unless the context otherwise requires, be deemed to include a reference to Talons.

So long as the Notes are represented by a Global Note and the relevant clearing system(s) so permit, the Notes shall be tradeable only in nominal amounts of at least the Specified Denomination (or if more than one Specified Denomination, the lowest Specified Denomination) specified in the applicable Final Terms and higher integral multiples of at least 1,000 in the relevant currency as specified in the applicable Final Terms (the "***Integral Amount***"), notwithstanding that no definitive Notes will be issued with a denomination above the

Definitive Amount in such currency. For the purposes of these Conditions, the "***Definitive Amount***" shall be equal to two times the lowest Specified Denomination minus the Integral Amount.

Subject as set out below, title to the Notes and Coupons will pass by delivery. The holder of each Coupon, whether or not such Coupon is attached to a Note, in his capacity as such, shall be subject to and bound by all the provisions contained in the relevant Note. The Bank, the Agent and any other Paying Agents may deem and treat the bearer of any Note or Coupon as the absolute owner thereof (whether or not overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon or notice of any previous loss or theft thereof) for all purposes but, in the case of any Global Note, without prejudice to the provisions set out below.

For so long as any of the Notes are represented by a Global Note, each person who is for the time being shown in the records of Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, as the beneficial owner of a particular nominal amount of such Global Notes (in which regard any certificate or other document issued by any such clearing system as to the nominal amount of such Notes standing to the account of any person shall be conclusive and binding for all purposes save in the case of manifest error) shall be treated by the Bank, the Agent or any other Paying Agent, as the case may be, as the holder of such nominal amount of such Notes for all purposes other than for the payment of principal and interest on such Notes, the right to which shall be vested, as against the Bank, the Agent or any other Paying Agent, as the case may be, solely in Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, in accordance with and subject to its terms (and the expressions "***Noteholder***", "***holder of Notes***" and related expressions shall be construed accordingly).

None of the Bank, the Agent or any other Paying Agent will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in any Global Notes or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

2. Definitive Notes

Beneficial interests in a permanent Global Note will be exchangeable in whole for security-printed Definitive Notes only (i) if Definitive Notes are required to be provided by applicable law; (ii) in the case of a permanent Global Note deposited with a common depositary for Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg, if Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, is closed for business for a continuous period of at least 14 days (other than by reason of holidays, statutory or otherwise) or announces an intention permanently to cease business or does in fact do so; or (iii) if an Event of Default (as defined in Condition 10) has occurred and is continuing and the relevant clearing system acting on instructions of any owner of a beneficial interest in the permanent Global Note having requested in writing Definitive Notes from the Agent. In the circumstances described above, the Bank will cause sufficient Definitive Notes to be executed and delivered as soon as practicable (and in any event within 45 days of the occurrence of any of the circumstances described in (ii) above or the making of the written request described in (iii) above) (the "***Permanent Exchange Date***") to the Agent and/or other Paying Agents, as the case may be, for completion, authentication and delivery, free of charge, to the relevant Noteholders.

In relation to any issue of Notes which have a denomination consisting of the minimum Specified Denomination plus a higher integral multiple of another smaller amount, it is possible that the Notes may be traded in amounts in excess of the minimum Specified Denomination that are not integral multiples of the minimum Specified Denomination. In such a case a Noteholder who, as a result of trading such amounts, holds a nominal amount of less than the minimum Specified Denomination may not receive a Definitive Note in respect of such holding (should Definitive Notes be printed) and would need to purchase a nominal amount of Notes such that its holding amounts to a Specified Denomination.

3. Status of Notes

(a) Status of Notes:

The Notes will constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank for purposes of the Bank Act. The Notes will constitute legal, valid and binding unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank enforceable in accordance with their terms and will rank *pari passu* with all deposit and other unsubordinated liabilities of the Bank (except as otherwise prescribed by law and subject to the exercise of bank resolution powers) and without any preference amongst themselves. Unless otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms, the main branch of the Bank in Toronto will take the deposits evidenced by the Notes, but without prejudice to the provisions of Condition 6. The Notes will not be deposits insured under the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* (the "**CDIC Act**").

(b) Status of Bail-inable Notes:

This Condition 3(b) will apply in respect of all Senior Notes issued by the Bank that are identified as Bail-inable Notes in the applicable Final Terms ("**Bail-inable Notes**"). All Senior Notes issued on or after September 23, 2018 that have an original or amended term to maturity (including explicit or embedded options) greater than 400 days, that have been assigned a CUSIP or ISIN or similar identification number and are not otherwise excluded (e.g. structured notes (as such term is used under the Canadian bank recapitalization regime for banks designated by the Superintendent of Financial Institutions (Canada) (the "**Superintendent**") as domestic systemically important banks (the "**Bail-in Regime**")) under the Bail-in Regime, will be identified as Bail-inable Notes in the applicable Final Terms. Senior Notes that constitute structured notes (as such term is used under the Bail-in Regime) or are otherwise excluded under the Bail-in Regime will not be identified as Bail-inable Notes in the applicable Final Terms. Senior Notes issued before September 23, 2018 which have their terms amended, on or after September 23, 2018, to increase their principal amount or to extend their term to maturity and which otherwise meet conditions set out above in this Condition 3(b) will also be Bail-inable Notes and following such amendment will be subject to this Condition 3(b).

By its acquisition of an interest in Bail-inable Notes, each Noteholder (which, for the purposes of this Condition 3(b), includes each holder of a beneficial interest in the Bail-inable Notes) is deemed to:

(i) agree to be bound, in respect of the Bail-inable Notes, by the CDIC Act, including the conversion of the Bail-inable Notes, in whole or in part – by means of a transaction or series of transactions and in one or more steps – into common shares of the Bank or any of its affiliates under subsection 39.2(2.3) of the CDIC Act and the variation or extinguishment of the Bail-inable Notes in consequence, and by the application of the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein in respect of the operation of the CDIC Act with respect to the Bail-inable Notes (a "**Bail-in Conversion**");

(ii) attorn to the jurisdiction of the courts in the Province of Ontario with respect to the CDIC Act and those laws;

(iii) have represented and warranted to the Bank that the Bank has not directly or indirectly provided financing to the Noteholder for the express purpose of investing in Bail-inable Notes; and

(iv) acknowledge and agree that the terms referred to in paragraphs (i) and (ii), above, are binding on such Noteholder despite any provisions in the Conditions, any other law that governs the Bail-inable Notes and any other agreement, arrangement or understanding between such Noteholder and the Bank with respect to the Bail-inable Notes.

The applicable Final Terms will indicate whether Senior Notes are Bail-inable Notes. All Bail-inable Notes will be subject to Bail-in Conversion.

Noteholders and beneficial owners of a Bail-inable Note will have no further rights in respect of a Bail-inable Note to the extent a Bail-inable Note is converted in a Bail-in Conversion, other than those provided under the Bail-in Regime, and by its acquisition of an interest in the Bail-inable Note, each holder or beneficial owner of the Bail-inable Note is deemed to irrevocably consent to the converted portion of the principal amount of the Bail-inable Note and any accrued and unpaid interest thereon being deemed paid in full by the issuance of common shares of the Bank (or, if applicable, any of its affiliates) upon the occurrence of a Bail-in Conversion, which Bail-in Conversion shall occur without any further action on the part of that Noteholder or beneficial owner or the Paying Agents; provided that, for the avoidance of doubt, this consent shall not limit or otherwise affect any rights of that holder or beneficial owner provided for under the Bail-in Regime.

Each holder or beneficial owner of the Bail-inable Notes that acquires an interest in the Bail-inable Notes in the secondary market and any successors, assigns, heirs, executors, administrators, trustees in bankruptcy and legal representatives of any such holder or beneficial owner shall be deemed to acknowledge, accept, agree to be bound by and consent to the same provisions specified herein to the same extent as the holders or beneficial owners that acquire an interest in the Bail-inable Notes upon their initial issuance, including, without limitation, with respect to the acknowledgement and agreement to be bound by and consent to the terms of the Bail-inable Notes related to the Bail-in Regime.

By its acquisition of an interest in a Bail-inable Note, each Noteholder or beneficial owner of a Bail-inable Note is deemed to have authorised, directed and requested Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg and any direct participant in such clearing system or other intermediary through which it holds the Bail-inable Note to take any and all necessary action, if required, to implement the Bail-in Conversion or any other action pursuant to the Bail-in Regime with respect to the Bail-inable Note, as may be imposed on it, without any further action or direction on the part of that Noteholder or beneficial owner or the Paying Agents, except as required in accordance with the rules and procedures for the time being of Euroclear and/or Clearstream and/or the intermediary, as applicable.

4. Interest

(a) Interest on Fixed Rate Notes

This Condition 4(a) applies to Fixed Rate Notes only. The applicable Final Terms contains provisions applicable to the determination of fixed rate interest and must be read in conjunction with this Condition 4(a) for full information on the manner in which interest is calculated on Fixed Rate Notes. In particular, the applicable Final Terms will specify the Interest Commencement Date, the Rate(s) of Interest, the Interest Payment Date(s), the Maturity Date, any applicable Fixed Coupon Amount, any applicable Broken Amount, the Calculation Amount, the Day Count Fraction, any applicable Determination Date, any applicable Range Accrual Factor and any Calculation Agent.

(i) Fixed Interest Periods and Interest Payment Dates

Each Fixed Rate Note bears interest from (and including) the Interest Commencement Date at the rate(s) per annum equal to the Rate(s) of Interest, subject to the application of the Range Accrual Factor, if applicable. Interest will be payable in arrear on the Interest Payment Date(s) in each year up to (and including) the Maturity Date so specified if that does not fall on an Interest Payment Date.

If the Notes are in definitive form, except as otherwise provided in the applicable Final Terms, the amount of interest payable on each Interest Payment Date in respect of the Fixed Interest Period ending on (but excluding) such date will amount to the Fixed Coupon Amount. Payments of interest on

any Interest Payment Date will, if so specified in the applicable Final Terms, amount to the Broken Amount so specified.

As used in these Conditions, "***Fixed Interest Period***" means the period from (and including) an Interest Payment Date (or the Interest Commencement Date) to (but excluding) the next (or first) Interest Payment Date.

Except in the case of Notes in definitive form where an applicable Fixed Coupon Amount or Broken Amount is specified in the applicable Final Terms, interest shall be calculated by the Calculation Agent in respect of any period by applying the Rate of Interest to:

(i) in the case of Fixed Rate Notes which are represented by a Global Note, the aggregate outstanding nominal amount of the Fixed Rate Notes represented by such Global Note; or

(ii) in the case of Fixed Rate Notes in definitive form, the Calculation Amount;

and in each case, multiplying such sum by (i) the applicable Day Count Fraction, (ii) if the applicable Final Terms specify "Range Accrual" to be applicable to such Interest Payment Date, the applicable Range Accrual Factor (which shall be determined in accordance with Condition 4(k) (Calculation of Range Accrual Factor) below), and rounding the resultant figure to the nearest sub-unit of the relevant Specified Currency, half of any such sub-unit being rounded upwards or otherwise in accordance with applicable market convention. Where the Specified Denomination of a Fixed Rate Note in definitive form is a multiple of the Calculation Amount, the amount of interest payable in respect of such Fixed Rate Note shall be the product of the amount (determined in the manner provided above) for the Calculation Amount and the amount by which the Calculation Amount is multiplied to reach the Specified Denomination, without further rounding.

In the case of Range Accrual Notes (as defined in Condition 4(k) below), Condition 4(d) shall also apply.

In the case of Notes for which Adjusted Fixed Interest Periods is specified as applying in the applicable Final Terms, where the Notes are represented by a Global Note or where the Specified Denomination of a definitive Note is a multiple of the Calculation Amount, the amount of interest payable in respect of such Note shall be the aggregate of the amounts (determined in the manner provided above) for each Calculation Amount comprising the outstanding principal amount of the Global Note or the Specified Denomination of a definitive Note, without any further rounding:

(A) where (x) there is not a numerically corresponding day in the calendar month in which an Interest Payment Date should occur or (y) any Interest Payment Date would otherwise fall on a day (other than a Saturday or a Sunday) which is not a Business Day, then such Interest Payment Date shall be adjusted, as specified in the applicable Final Terms, for payment and interest accrual purposes**,** in accordance with the Business Day Convention (as defined in Condition 4(c)(i) specified in the Final Terms) where "**Business Day**" shall be as defined in Condition 4(c)(i); and

(B) the Calculation Agent will cause each Interest Amount for each Fixed Interest Period and the relevant Interest Payment Date to be notified to the Issuer and to any stock exchange on which the relevant Fixed Rate Notes are for the time being listed or admitted to trading, and for so long as the Notes are represented by a global Note, Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg, and to be published in accordance with Condition 13 as soon as possible after their determination but in no event later than the fourth London Business Day thereafter. Each Interest Amount and Interest Payment Date so notified may subsequently be amended (or appropriate alternative arrangements

made by way of adjustment) without notice in the event of an extension or shortening of the Fixed Interest Period. For the purposes of this Condition 4(a)(B), the expression "**London Business Day**" means a day (other than a Saturday or a Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments and are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in London.

In these Conditions:

"***Calculation Agent***" means such entity as may be specified in the applicable Final Terms as the Calculation Agent.

"***Day Count Fraction***" means in respect of a calculation of an amount of interest in accordance with this Condition 4(a):

(i) if "***Actual / Actual (ICMA)***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms:

(A) in the case of Notes where the number of days in the relevant period from (and including) the most recent Interest Payment Date (or, if none, the Interest Commencement Date) to (but excluding) the relevant payment date (the "***Accrual Period***") is equal to or shorter than the Determination Period during which the Accrual Period ends, the number of days in such Accrual Period divided by the product of (1) the number of days in such Determination Period and (2) the number of Determination Dates (as specified in the applicable Final Terms) that would occur in one calendar year; or

(B) in the case of Notes where the Accrual Period is longer than the Determination Period during which the Accrual Period ends, the sum of:

(1) the number of days in such Accrual Period falling in the Determination Period in which the Accrual Period begins divided by the product of (x) the number of days in such Determination Period and (y) the number of Determination Dates that would occur in one calendar year; and

(2) the number of days in such Accrual Period falling in the next Determination Period divided by the product of (x) the number of days in such Determination Period and (y) the number of Determination Dates that would occur in one calendar year;

(ii) if "***30/360***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the number of days in the Accrual Period (such number of days being calculated on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of 12 months of 30 days) divided by 360;

(iii) if "***30E/360***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the number of days in the Accrual Period divided by 360, calculated on a formula basis as follows:

$$\text{Day Count Fraction} = \frac{[360 \times (Y_2 - Y_1)] + [30 \times (M_2 - M_1)] + (D_2 - D_1)}{360}$$

where:

"$\mathbf{Y_1}$" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Accrual Period falls;

"$\mathbf{Y_2}$" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Accrual Period falls;

"**M_1**" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Accrual Period falls;

"**M_2**" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Accrual Period falls;

"**D_1**" is the first calendar day, expressed as a number, of the Accrual Period, unless such number would be 31, in which case D_1 will be 30; and

"**D_2**" is the calendar day, expressed as a number, immediately following the last day included in the Accrual Period, unless such number would be 31, in which case D_2 will be 30; and

(iv) if "***Actual/365 (Fixed)***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the actual number of days in the relevant period divided by 365.

"**Determination Date**" means the date specified in the applicable Final Terms or, if none is specified, it means the Interest Payment Date.

"***Determination Period***" means the period from (and including) a Determination Date to but excluding the next Determination Date (including, where the Interest Commencement Date or the Final Interest Payment Date is not a Determination Date, the period commencing on the first Determination Date prior to, and ending on the first Determination Date following after, such date).

"***euro***" means the currency of the Member States of the European Union (the "**EU**") that have adopted the single currency in accordance with the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union, as amended.

"***Interest Amount***" means the amount of interest per Calculation Amount payable for a period for which a Fixed Coupon Amount has not been specified.

"***RMB Settlement Centre***" means the financial centre(s) specified as such in the applicable Final Terms in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. If no RMB Settlement Centre is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the RMB Settlement Centre shall be deemed to be Hong Kong.

"**s*ub-unit***" means with respect to any currency other than the euro, the lowest amount of such currency that is available as legal tender in the country of such currency and, with respect to the euro, means one cent.

(ii) Fixed Rate Notes with a Step-Up

"***Fixed Interest Period End Date***" means each date specified in the applicable Final Terms.

In respect of a Fixed Rate Note with a step-up in the rate of interest, the Rate of Interest in respect of each Fixed Interest Period means the "Rate of Interest (Step-Up)" specified to be applicable in respect of each Fixed Interest Period End Date on which the Fixed Interest Period ends, as set forth in the applicable Final Terms.

(b) *Interest on Fixed Rate Reset Notes*

Each Fixed Rate Reset Note bears interest on its outstanding nominal amount:

(i) from and including the Interest Commencement Date up to but excluding the First Reset Date at the Initial Rate of Interest;

(ii) in the First Reset Period, at the First Reset Rate of Interest; and

(iii) for each Subsequent Reset Period thereafter (if any), at the relevant Subsequent Reset Rate of Interest,

payable, subject as provided herein, in arrear on each Interest Payment Date. The amount of interest payable shall be determined in accordance with this Condition 4.

Save as otherwise provided herein, the provisions applicable to Fixed Rate Notes shall apply to Fixed Rate Reset Notes.

In this Condition 4(b):

"**Anniversary Date(s)**" means each date specified as such in the applicable Final Terms;

"Benchmark Gilt" means, in respect of a Reset Period, such United Kingdom government security having a maturity date on or about the last day of such Reset Period as the Calculation Agent, with the advice of the Reset Reference Banks, may determine to be appropriate;

"**Benchmark Gilt Rate**" means, in respect of a Reset Period, the gross redemption yield (as calculated by the Calculation Agent in accordance with generally accepted market practice at such time) on a semi-annual compounding basis (converted to an annualised yield and rounded up (if necessary) to four decimal places) of the Benchmark Gilt in respect of that Reset Period, with the price of the Benchmark Gilt for this purpose being the arithmetic average (rounded up (if necessary) to the nearest 0.001 per cent. (0.0005 per cent being rounded upwards)) of the bid and offered prices of such Benchmark Gilt quoted by the Reset Reference Banks at 3.00 p.m. (London time) on the relevant Reset Determination Date on a dealing basis for settlement on the next following dealing day in London. If at least four quotations are provided, the Benchmark Gilt Rate will be the rounded arithmetic mean of the quotations provided, eliminating the highest quotation (or, in the event of equality, one of the highest) and the lowest quotation (or, in the event of equality, one of the lowest). If only two or three quotations are provided, the Benchmark Gilt Rate will be the rounded arithmetic mean of the quotations provided. If only one quotation is provided, the Benchmark Gilt Rate will be the rounded quotation provided. If no quotations are provided, the Benchmark Gilt Rate will be determined by the Calculation Agent in its sole discretion following consultation with the Issuer;

"**dealing day"** means a day, other than a Saturday or Sunday, on which the London Stock Exchange (or such other stock exchange on which the Benchmark Gilt is at the relevant time listed) is ordinarily open for the trading of securities;

"**First Reset Date**" means the date specified as such in the applicable Final Terms;

"**First Reset Period**" means the period from and including the First Reset Date up to but excluding the Second Reset Date or, if no such Second Reset Date is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the date fixed for redemption of the Notes (if any);

"**First Reset Rate of Interest**" means the rate of interest as determined by the Calculation Agent on the Reset Determination Date corresponding to the First Reset Period as the sum of the relevant Reset Rate plus the relevant Margin;

"**Initial Rate of Interest**" means the initial rate of interest per annum specified in the applicable Final Terms;

"**Margin**" means the margin (expressed as a percentage) in relation to the relevant Reset Period specified as such in the applicable Final Terms;

"**Mid-Swap Quotations**" means the arithmetic mean of the bid and offered rates:

(i) if the Specified Currency is Sterling, for a semi-annual fixed leg (calculated on an Actual/365 day count basis) of a fixed for floating interest rate swap transaction in Sterling which (i) has a term commencing on the relevant Reset Date which is equal to that of the relevant Swap Rate Period; (ii) is in an amount that is representative of a single transaction in the relevant market at the relevant time with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the relevant swap market; and (iii) has a floating leg based on (subject as otherwise provided pursuant to Condition 4(f)) the 6-month LIBOR rate (calculated on an Actual/365 day count basis), unless as otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms;

(ii) if the Specified Currency is euro, for the annual fixed leg (calculated on a 30/360 day count basis) of a fixed for floating interest rate swap transaction in euro which (i) has a term commencing on the relevant Reset Date which is equal to that of the relevant Swap Rate Period; (ii) is in an amount that is representative of a single transaction in the relevant market at the relevant time with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the relevant swap market; and (iii) has a floating leg based on (subject as otherwise provided pursuant to Condition 4(f)) the 6-month EURIBOR rate (calculated on an Actual/360 day count basis), unless as otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms;

(iii) if the Specified Currency is US dollars, for the semi-annual fixed leg (calculated on a 30/360 day count basis) of a fixed for floating interest rate swap transaction in US dollars which (i) has a term commencing on the relevant Reset Date which is equal to that of the relevant Swap Rate Period; (ii) is in an amount that is representative of a single transaction in the relevant market at the relevant time with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the relevant swap market; and (iii) has a floating leg based on (subject as otherwise provided pursuant to Condition 4(f)) the 3-month LIBOR rate (calculated on an Actual/360 day count basis), unless as otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms;

(iv) if the Specified Currency is Renminbi, for the semi-annual fixed leg (calculated on an Actual/365 day count basis) of a fixed for floating interest rate swap transaction in Renminbi which (i) has a term commencing on the relevant Reset Date which is equal to that of the relevant Swap Rate Period; (ii) is in an amount that is representative of a single transaction in the relevant market at the relevant time with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the relevant swap market, and (iii) has a floating leg based on (subject as otherwise provided pursuant to Condition 4(f)) the 12-month CNH HIBOR rate (calculated on an Actual/365 day count basis), unless as otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms; and

(v) if the Specified Currency is not Sterling, euro, US dollars or Renminbi, for the Fixed Leg (as set out in the applicable Final Terms) of a fixed for floating interest rate swap transaction in that Specified Currency which (i) has a term commencing on the relevant Reset Date which is equal to that of the relevant Swap Rate Period; (ii) is in an amount that is representative of a single transaction in the relevant market at the relevant time with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the relevant swap market; and (iii) has a Floating Leg (as set out in the applicable Final Terms) and subject as otherwise provided pursuant to Condition 4(f);

"**Mid-Swap Rate**" means in respect of a Reset Period, (i) the applicable semi-annual or annualised (as specified in the applicable Final Terms) mid-swap rate for swap transactions in the Specified Currency (with a maturity equal to that of the relevant Swap Rate Period specified in the applicable Final Terms) as displayed on the Screen Page at 11.00 a.m. or any other Relevant Time specified in the applicable

Final Terms (in the principal financial centre of the Specified Currency) on the relevant Reset Determination Date (which rate, if the relevant Interest Payment Dates are other than semi-annual or annual Interest Payment Dates, shall be adjusted by and in the manner determined by, the Calculation Agent) or (ii) if such rate is not displayed on the Screen Page at such time and date, the relevant Reset Reference Bank Rate;

"**Reference Bond**" means for any Reset Period a government security or securities issued by the government of the state responsible for issuing the Specified Currency (which, if the Specified Currency is euro, shall be Germany) selected by the Calculation Agent in its discretion after consultation with the Issuer as having an actual or interpolated maturity comparable with the relevant Reset Period and that (in the opinion of the Calculation Agent, after consultation with the Issuer) would be utilised, at the time of selection and in accordance with customary financial practice, in pricing new issuances of corporate debt securities denominated in the Specified Currency and of comparable maturity to the relevant Reset Period;

"**Reference Bond Dealer**" means each of five banks which are primary government securities dealers or market makers in pricing corporate bond issuances, as selected by the Calculation Agent in its discretion after consultation with the Issuer;

"**Reference Bond Dealer Quotations**" means, with respect to each Reference Bond Dealer and the Reset Determination Date, the arithmetic mean, as determined by the Calculation Agent, of the bid and offered prices for the Reference Bond (expressed in each case as a percentage of its nominal amount) as at approximately 11:a.m (or any other Relevant Time as specified in the applicable Final Terms) in the principal financial centre of the Specified Currency on the Reset Determination Date and quoted in writing to the Calculation Agent by such Reference Bond Dealer;

"**Reference Bond Price**" means, with respect to a Reset Determination Date, (a) the arithmetic mean of the Reference Bond Dealer Quotations for that Reset Determination Date, after excluding the highest and lowest such Reference Bond Dealer Quotations, or (b) if the Calculation Agent obtains fewer than four such Reference Bond Dealer Quotations, the arithmetic mean of all such quotations, or (c) if the Calculation Agent obtains only one Reference Bond Dealer Quotation or if the Calculation Agent obtains no Reference Bond Dealer Quotations, the Subsequent Reset Rate of Interest shall be that which was determined on the last preceding Reset Determination Date or, in the case of the first Reset determination Date, the First Reset Rate of Interest shall be the Initial Rate of Interest;

"**Reference Bond Rate**" means, in respect of a Reset Period, the annual yield to maturity or interpolated yield to maturity (on the relevant day count basis) of the Reference Bond, assuming a price for such Reference Bond (expressed as a percentage of its nominal amount) equal to the Reference Bond Price;

"**Reset Determination Date**" means, in respect of a Reset Period, (a) each date specified as such in the applicable Final Terms or, if none is so specified, (b) (i) if the Specified Currency is Sterling or Renminbi, the first Business Day of such Reset Period, (ii) if the Specified Currency is euro, the day falling two TARGET2 Business Days prior to the first day of such Reset Period, (iii) if the Specified Currency is US dollars, the day falling two U.S. Government Securities Business Days prior to the first day of such Reset Period (iv) for any other Specified Currency, the day falling two Business Days in the principal financial centre for such Specified Currency prior to the first day of such Reset Period;

"**Reset Date**" means each of the First Reset Date, the Second Reset Date and each of the Anniversary Dates (if any) as is specified in the applicable Final Terms;

"**Reset Period**" means the First Reset Period or a Subsequent Reset Period;

"**Reset Rate**" means (a) if 'Mid-Swap Rate' is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the relevant Mid-Swap Rate; (b) if 'Benchmark Gilt Rate' is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the relevant Benchmark Gilt Rate; or (c) if "Reference Bond Rate" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the relevant Reference Bond Rate;

"**Reset Reference Bank Rate**" means the percentage rate determined on the basis of the Mid-Swap Quotations provided by the Reset Reference Banks to the Calculation Agent at or around 11:00 a.m. (or any other Relevant Time specified in the applicable Final Terms) in the principal financial centre of the Specified Currency (which in the case of Renminbi shall, for these purposes, be Hong Kong) on the relevant Reset Determination Date and, rounded, if necessary, to the nearest 0.001 per cent (0.0005 per cent, being rounded upwards). If at least four quotations are provided, the Reset Reference Bank Rate will be the rounded arithmetic mean of the quotations provided, eliminating the highest quotation (or, in the event of equality, one of the highest) and the lowest quotation (or, in the event of equality, one of the lowest). If only two or three quotations are provided, the Reset Reference Bank Rate will be the rounded arithmetic mean of the quotations provided. If only one quotation is provided, the Reset Reference Bank Rate will be the rounded quotation provided. If no quotations are provided, the Reset Reference Bank Rate will be determined by the Calculation Agent in its sole discretion following consultation with the Issuer;

"**Reset Reference Banks**" means (i) in the case of the calculation of a Reset Reference Bank Rate, five leading swap dealers in the principal interbank market relating to the Specified Currency selected by the Calculation Agent in its discretion after consultation with the Issuer or (ii) in the case of a Benchmark Gilt Rate, five brokers of gilts and/or gilt-edged market makers selected by the Calculation Agent in its discretion after consultation with the Issuer;

"**Screen Page**" means Reuters screen page "ICESWAP1", "ICESWAP2", "ICESWAP3", "ICESWAP4", "ICESWAP5" or "ICESWAP6" as specified in the applicable Final Terms or such other page on Thomson Reuters or any other information service as is specified in the applicable Final Terms, or such other screen page as may replace it on Thomson Reuters or any other information service or, as the case may be, on such other information service that may replace Thomson Reuters or any other information service, in each case, as may be nominated by the person providing or sponsoring the information appearing there for the purpose of displaying comparable rates;

"**Second Reset Date**" means the date specified as such in the applicable Final Terms;

"**Subsequent Reset Period**" means the period from and including the Second Reset Date to but excluding the next Reset Date, and each successive period from and including a Reset Date to but excluding the next succeeding Reset Date;

"**Subsequent Reset Rate of Interest**" means, in respect of any Subsequent Reset Period, the rate of interest determined by the Calculation Agent on the Reset Determination Date corresponding to such Subsequent Reset Period as the sum of the relevant Reset Rate plus the relevant Margin;

"**Swap Rate Period**" means the period or periods specified as such in the applicable Final Terms; and

"**U.S. Government Securities Business Day**" means any day except for a Saturday, Sunday or a day on which the Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association recommends that the fixed income departments of its members be closed for the entire day for purposes of trading in U.S. government securities.

(c) Interest on Floating Rate Notes

This Condition 4(c) applies to Floating Rate Notes only. The applicable Final Terms contains provisions applicable to the determination of floating rate interest and must be read in conjunction with this Condition 4(c) for full information on the manner in which interest is calculated on Floating Rate Notes. In particular, the applicable Final Terms will identify, as applicable, any Specified Interest Payment Dates, any Specified Period, the Interest Commencement Date, the Business Day Convention, any Additional Business Centres, whether ISDA Determination, Screen Rate Determination or CMS Reference Rate Determination applies to the calculation of interest, the party who will calculate the amount of interest if not the Agent, the Margin, any maximum or minimum interest rates, the Day Count Fraction and any applicable Range Accrual Factor. Where ISDA Determination applies to the calculation of interest, the applicable Final Terms will also specify the applicable Floating Rate Option, Designated Maturity and Reset Date. Where Screen Rate Determination applies to the calculation of interest, the applicable Final Terms will also specify the applicable Reference Rate, Relevant Financial Centre, Interest Determination Date(s), Relevant Screen Page and any applicable Range Accrual Factor.

(i) Interest Payment Dates

Each Floating Rate Note bears interest on its outstanding nominal amount from and including the Interest Commencement Date and such interest will be payable in arrear on either:

(A) the Specified Interest Payment Date(s) (each an "***Interest Payment Date***") in each year specified in the applicable Final Terms; or

(B) if no express Specified Interest Payment Date(s) is/are specified in the applicable Final Terms, on each date (each, an "***Interest Payment Date***") which falls the number of months or other period specified as the Specified Period in the applicable Final Terms after the preceding Interest Payment Date or, in the case of the first Interest Payment Date, after the Interest Commencement Date.

Such interest shall be payable in respect of each Interest Period subject to the application of the Range Accrual Factor, if applicable. In these Conditions, "***Interest Period***" means the period from (and including) the Interest Commencement Date to (but excluding) the first Interest Payment Date and each successive period from (and including) an Interest Payment Date to (but excluding) the next succeeding Interest Payment Date.

If a Business Day Convention is specified in the applicable Final Terms and (x) if there is no numerically corresponding day in the calendar month in which an Interest Payment Date should occur or (y) if any Interest Payment Date would otherwise fall on a day which is not a Business Day, then if the Business Day Convention specified is:

(A) in any case where Specified Periods are specified in accordance with Condition 4(c)(i)(B) above, the Floating Rate Convention, such Interest Payment Date (i) in the case of (x) above, shall be the last day that is a Business Day in the relevant month and the provisions of (B) below shall apply *mutatis mutandis* or (ii) in the case of (y) above, shall be postponed to the next day which is a Business Day unless it would thereby fall into the next calendar month, in which event (1) such Interest Payment Date shall be the immediately preceding Business Day and (2) each subsequent Interest Payment Date shall be the last Business Day in the month which falls in the Specified Period after the preceding applicable Interest Payment Date occurred; or

(B) the Following Business Day Convention, such Interest Payment Date shall be postponed to the next day which is a Business Day; or

(C) the Modified Following Business Day Convention, such Interest Payment Date shall be postponed to the next day which is a Business Day unless it would thereby fall into the next calendar month, in which event such Interest Payment Date shall be brought forward to the immediately preceding Business Day;

(D) the Preceding Business Day Convention, such Interest Payment Date shall be brought forward to the immediately preceding Business Day; or

(E) "No Adjustment", the relevant date shall not be adjusted in accordance with any Business Day Convention.

In these Conditions, "***Business Day***" means a day which is both:

(A) a day (other than a Saturday or a Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments and are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in London and any Additional Business Centre (other than TARGET2) specified in the applicable Final Terms and if TARGET2 is specified as an Additional Business Centre, a TARGET2 Business Day (as defined below); and

(B) either (1) in relation to any sum payable in a Specified Currency other than euro or Renminbi, a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments in the principal financial centre of the country of the relevant Specified Currency (if other than London and any Additional Business Centre and which, in the case of Australian dollars or New Zealand dollars, shall be Sydney or Auckland, respectively) and, if TARGET2 is specified as an Additional Business Centre in the applicable Final Terms, a day which is a TARGET2 Business Day (as defined below), (2) in relation to any sum payable in euro, a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) which is a TARGET2 Business Day (as defined below); or (3) in relation to any sum payable in Renminbi, a day (other than a Saturday, Sunday or public holiday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments and are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in the RMB Settlement Centre(s).

(ii) Rate of Interest

The Rate of Interest payable from time to time in respect of Floating Rate Notes will be determined in the manner specified in the applicable Final Terms.

(A) ISDA Determination

Where ISDA Determination is specified in the applicable Final Terms as the manner in which the Rate of Interest is to be determined, the Rate of Interest for each Interest Period will be the relevant ISDA Rate plus or minus the Margin (if any) as indicated in the applicable Final Terms). For the purposes of this subparagraph (ii)(A), "***ISDA Rate***" for any Interest Period means a rate equal to the Floating Rate that would be determined by the Agent or other person specified in the applicable Final Terms under an interest rate swap transaction if the Agent or that other person were acting as Calculation Agent for that swap transaction under the terms of an agreement incorporating the ISDA 2006 Definitions, as amended, supplemented or updated as at the Issue

Date of the first Tranche of Notes, published by the International Swaps and Derivatives Association, Inc. (the "***ISDA Definitions***") and under which:

(1) the Floating Rate Option is as specified in the applicable Final Terms;

(2) the Designated Maturity is a period specified in the applicable Final Terms; and

(3) the relevant Reset Date is specified in the applicable Final Terms.

The ISDA Definitions contain provisions for determining the applicable Floating Rate (as defined below) in the event that the specified Floating Rate is not available.

For the purpose of this subparagraph (ii)(A), "***Floating Rate***", "***Calculation Agent***", "***Floating Rate Option***", "***Designated Maturity***", "***Rate Option***" and "***Reset Date***" have the meanings given to those terms in the ISDA Definitions.

(B) Screen Rate Determination

Where Screen Rate Determination is specified in the applicable Final Terms as the manner in which the Rate of Interest is to be determined, the Rate of Interest for each Interest Period will, subject as provided below, subject to Condition 4(l) below, be:

(1) where the Reference Rate is specified as being LIBOR, EURIBOR, CNH HIBOR or HIBOR, either:

(X) the offered quotation (if there is only one quotation on the Relevant Screen Page); or

(Y) the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the fifth decimal place, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of the offered quotations,

(expressed as a percentage rate per annum), for the Reference Rate which appears or appear, as the case may be, on the Relevant Screen Page as at the Relevant Time in the Relevant Financial Centre on the Interest Determination Date in question plus or minus (as indicated in the applicable Final Terms) the Margin (if any), all as determined by the Agent. If five or more such offered quotations are available on the Relevant Screen Page, the highest (or, if there is more than one such highest rate, one only of such rates) and the lowest (or, if there is more than one such lowest rate, one only of such rates) shall be disregarded by the Agent for the purpose of determining the arithmetic mean (rounded as provided above) of such offered quotations.

If on any Interest Determination Date the Relevant Screen Page is not available or the offered quotation or quotations are unavailable, the Agent shall request each of the Reference Banks (as defined below) to provide the Agent with its offered quotation (expressed as a percentage rate per annum) for deposits in the Specified Currency for the relevant Interest Period at approximately the Relevant Time in the Relevant Financial Centre on the Interest Determination Date in question. If two or more of the Reference Banks provide the Agent with such offered quotations, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period shall be the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the fifth decimal place, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of such offered quotations plus or minus (as appropriate) the Margin (if any), all as determined by the Agent.

If on any Interest Determination Date one only or none of the Reference Banks provides the Agent with such offered quotations as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Rate of Interest

for the relevant Interest Period shall be the rate per annum which the Agent determines as being the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the fifth decimal place, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of the rates, as communicated to (and at the request of) the Agent by the Reference Banks or any two or more of them, at which such banks were offered, as at the Relevant Time in the Relevant Financial Centre on the relevant Interest Determination Date, deposits in the Specified Currency for the relevant Interest Period by leading banks in the London interbank market (if the Reference Rate is LIBOR) or the Euro-zone interbank market (if the Reference Rate is EURIBOR) or the Hong Kong interbank market (if the Reference Rate is CNH HIBOR or HIBOR), plus or minus (as appropriate) the Margin (if any) or, if fewer than two of the Reference Banks provide the Agent with such offered rates, the offered rate for deposits in the Specified Currency for the relevant Interest Period, or the arithmetic mean (rounded as provided above) of the offered rates for deposits in the Specified Currency for the relevant Interest Period, at which, at the Relevant Time in the Relevant Financial Centre on the relevant Interest Determination Date, any one or more banks (which bank or banks is or are in the opinion of the Bank suitable for such purpose) informs the Agent it is quoting to leading banks in the London interbank market (if the Reference Rate is LIBOR) or the Euro-zone interbank market (if the Reference Rate is EURIBOR) or the Hong Kong interbank market (if the Reference Rate is CNH HIBOR or HIBOR) plus or minus (as appropriate) the Margin (if any), provided that, if the Rate of Interest cannot be determined in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this paragraph, the Rate of Interest shall be determined as at the last preceding Interest Determination Date (though substituting, where a different Margin is to be applied to the relevant Interest Period from that which applied to the last preceding Interest Period, the Margin relating to the relevant Interest Period in place of the Margin relating to that last preceding Interest Period).

(2) Where the Reference Rate is specified as being CDOR, the average bid rate for bankers' acceptances in Canadian dollars for the relevant Interest Period which appears on the Reuters Screen CDOR Page (being the Relevant Screen Page) as of 10:00 a.m. (Toronto time) on the Interest Determination Date in question plus or minus (as indicated in the applicable Final Terms) the Margin (if any), all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

If CDOR does not appear on Reuters Screen CDOR Page or the Reuters Screen CDOR Page is not available, the Calculation Agent shall request the principal Toronto office of each of four Schedule I Canadian chartered banks to provide the Calculation Agent with its bid rate of interest (expressed as a percentage rate per annum) for bankers' acceptances in Canadian dollars, in an amount approximately equal to the aggregate nominal amount of the Notes, for the relevant Interest Period accepted by such Reference Banks as at approximately 10:00 a.m. (Toronto time) on the Interest Determination Date. If two or more of such banks provide the Calculation Agent with such bid rates of interest, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period shall be the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the fifth decimal place, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of such offered quotations, plus or minus (as appropriate) the Margin (if any), all as determined by the Calculation Agent. If fewer than two such banks provide the Calculation Agent with its respective bid rate of interest, the Reference Rate for such Interest Determination Date shall be the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the fifth decimal place, with 0.00005 being rounded upwards) of the bid rates quoted by major banks in Toronto, selected by the Calculation Agent, for bankers' acceptance in Canadian dollars, in an amount approximately equal to the aggregate nominal amount of the Notes, for the relevant Interest Period accepted by such banks as at approximately 10:00 a.m. (Toronto time) on the Interest Determination Date, for the relevant Interest Period for settlement on such Interest Determination Date, plus or minus (as appropriate) the Margin (if any), all as determined by the Calculation Agent, provided that, if the Rate of Interest cannot be determined in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this paragraph, the Rate of Interest shall be determined as at the last preceding Interest Determination Date (though substituting, where a different Margin is to be applied to the relevant Interest Period from that

which applied to the last preceding Interest Period, the Margin relating to the relevant Interest Period in place of the Margin relating to that last preceding Interest Period).

(C) CMS Reference Rate Determination

Where CMS Reference Rate Determination is specified in the applicable Final Terms as the manner in which the Interest Rate is to be determined, the Interest Rate for each Interest Period will be the CMS Reference Rate Determination.

For the purposes of this subparagraph (ii), the "**CMS Reference Rate Determination**" for an Interest Period means the Relevant Swap Rate for swap transactions in the Reference Currency with a maturity of the CMS Maturity commencing on the first day of the relevant Interest Period (expressed as a percentage rate per annum) which appears on the Relevant Screen Page as at the Relevant Time on the relevant Interest Determination Date, all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

(1) Fallbacks for Reference Currency other than Canadian dollars

Subject to Condition 4(l), if the Relevant Screen Page is not available, the Calculation Agent shall request each of the CMS Reference Banks to provide the Calculation Agent with its quotation for the Relevant Swap Rate (expressed as a percentage rate per annum) at approximately the Relevant Time on the Interest Determination Date in question. If at least three of the CMS Reference Banks provide the Calculation Agent such quotations, the CMS Reference Rate Determination for such Interest Period shall be the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the fifth decimal place, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of the quotations, eliminating the highest quotation (or, in the event of equality, one of the highest) and the lowest quotation (or, in the event of equality, one of the lowest) in the case of five quotations or more.

Subject to Condition 4(l), if on any Interest Determination Date less than three only or none of the CMS Reference Banks provides the Calculation Agent with such quotations as provided in the preceding paragraph, the CMS Reference Rate Determination shall be determined by the Calculation Agent in its sole and absolute discretion on a commercial basis as it shall consider appropriate and in accordance with standard market practice.

(2) Fallbacks where Reference Currency is Canadian dollars

Subject to Condition 4(l), if the Relevant Screen Page is not available, the Calculation Agent shall request each of the CMS Reference Banks to provide the Calculation Agent with its quotation for the Relevant Swap Rate (expressed as a percentage per annum) at approximately the Relevant Time on the Interest Determination Date in question. If two or more of such banks provide the Calculation Agent with such quotations, the CMS Reference Rate Determination for such Interest Period shall be the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the fifth decimal place, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of such quotations in the case of five quotations or more.

Subject to Condition 4(l), if on any Interest Determination Date fewer than two of the CMS Reference Banks provides the Calculation Agent with such quotations as provided in the preceding paragraph, the CMS Reference Rate Determination shall be determined by the Calculation Agent in its sole and absolute discretion on a commercial basis as it shall consider appropriate and in accordance with standard market practice.

In this Condition 4:

"**CDOR**" means Canadian Dollars Offered Rate.

"***CMS Reference Banks***" means (i) where the Reference Currency is euro, the principal office of five leading swap dealers in the interbank market, (ii) where the Reference Currency is sterling, the principal London office of five leading swap dealers in the London interbank market, (iii) where the Reference Currency is U.S. dollars, the principal New York City office of five leading swap dealers in the New York City interbank market, (iv) where the Reference Currency is Canadian dollars, four major Canadian Schedule 1 chartered banks, or (v) in the case of any other Reference Currency, the principal Relevant Financial Centre office of five leading swap dealers in the Relevant Financial Centre interbank market, in each case as selected by the Calculation Agent.

"***CNH HIBOR***" means CNH Hong Kong interbank offered rate.

"***EURIBOR***" means the Euro-zone interbank offered rate.

"***Euro-zone***" means the region comprised of Member States of the EU that adopt the euro as the single currency in accordance with the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union, as amended.

"**HIBOR**" means the Hong Kong interbank offered rate.

"***LIBOR***" means the London interbank offered rate.

"***Reference Banks***" means those banks whose offered rates were used to determine such quotation when such quotation last appeared on the Relevant Screen Page.

"***Reference Rate***" means (i) LIBOR, (ii) EURIBOR, (iii) CDOR, (iv) CNH HIBOR, (v) HIBOR or (iv) CMS Reference Rate Determination, in each case for the relevant period, as specified in the applicable Final Terms.

"***Relevant Financial Centre***" means, with respect to any Floating Rate or CMS Reference Rate Determination, the financial centre as may be specified as such in the applicable Final Terms or, if none is so specified, means London in the case of a determination of LIBOR, Brussels in the case of a determination of EURIBOR or Hong Kong in the case of a determination in CNH HIBOR or HIBOR.

"***Relevant Screen Page***" means such page, section, caption, column or other part of a particular information service (including, but not limited to, the Reuters Monitor Money Rates Service ("***Reuters***")) as may be specified in the applicable Final Terms for the purposes of providing a Reference Rate, or such other page, section, caption, column or other part as may replace it on that information service or on such other information service, in each case as may be nominated by the person or organisation providing or sponsoring the information appearing there for the purpose of deploying rates or prices comparable to that Reference Rate.

"***Relevant Swap Rate***" means:

(i) where the Reference Currency is euro, the mid-market annual swap rate determined on the basis of the arithmetic mean of the bid and offered rates for the annual fixed leg, calculated on a 30/360 day count basis, of a fixed-for-floating euro interest rate swap

transaction with a term equal to the CMS Maturity commencing on the first day of the relevant Interest Period and in a Representative Amount with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the swap market, where the floating leg, in each case calculated on an Actual/360 day count basis, is equivalent to EUR-EURIBOR-Reuters (as defined in the ISDA Definitions) with a designated maturity determined by the Calculation Agent by reference to standard market practice and/or the ISDA Definitions;

(ii) where the Reference Currency is sterling, the mid-market semi-annual swap rate determined on the basis of the arithmetic mean of the bid and offered rates for the semi-annual fixed leg, calculated on an Actual/365 (Fixed) day count basis, of a fixed-for-floating sterling interest rate swap transaction with a term equal to the CMS Maturity commencing on the first day of the relevant Interest Period and in a Representative Amount with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the swap market, where the floating leg, in each case calculated on an Actual/365 (Fixed) day count basis, is equivalent (A) if the CMS Maturity is greater than one year, to GBP-LIBOR-BBA (as defined in the ISDA Definitions) with a designated maturity of six months or (B) if the CMS Maturity is one year or less, to GBP-LIBOR-BBA with a designated maturity of three months;

(iii) where the Reference Currency is U.S. dollars, the mid-market semi-annual swap rate determined on the basis of the mean of the bid and offered rates for the semi-annual fixed leg, calculated on a 30/360 day count basis, of a fixed-for-floating U.S. dollar interest rate swap transaction with a term equal to the CMS Maturity commencing on the first day of the relevant Interest Period and in a Representative Amount with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the swap market, where the floating leg, calculated on an Actual/360 day count basis, is equivalent to USD-LIBOR-BBA (as defined in the ISDA Definitions) with a designated maturity of three months;

(iv) where the Reference Currency is Canadian dollars, the mid-market swap rate as determined by the Calculation Agent in its sole discretion on a commercial basis as it shall consider appropriate and in accordance with standard market practice; and

(iv) where the Reference Currency is any other currency, the mid-market swap rate as determined by the Calculation Agent in its sole and absolute discretion on a commercial basis as it shall consider appropriate and in accordance with standard market practice.

"***Relevant Time***" means (i) in the case of LIBOR, 11:00 a.m., (ii) in the case of EURIBOR, 11:00 a.m., (iii) in the case of CNH HIBOR, 11:15 a.m., or if, at or around that time it is notified that the fixing will be published at 2:30 p.m., then as of 2:30 p.m. or (iv) in the case of HIBOR, 11:00 a.m. each as specified in the applicable Final Terms, or (v) where CMS Reference Rate Determination is specified in the applicable Final Terms as the manner in which the Interest Rate is to be determined, has the meaning specified in the Final Terms.

"***Representative Amounts***" means with respect of any CMS Reference Rate Determination on an Interest Payment Date, the amount that is representative for a single transaction in the relevant market at the time;

"***TARGET2***" means the Trans-European Automated Real-Time Gross Settlement Express Transfer payment system which utilises a single shared platform and which launched on 19 November 2007 (or any successor thereto).

"***TARGET2 Business Day***" means a day on which TARGET2 is open.

(iii) Determination of Rate of Interest and Calculation of Interest Amount

The Calculation Agent will, on or as soon as practicable after each date on which the Rate of Interest is to be determined, determine the Rate of Interest for the relevant Interest Period or, if determining the First Reset Rate of Interest or a Subsequent Reset Rate of Interest in respect of Fixed Rate Reset Notes, the Interest Amount for each Interest Period falling within the relevant Reset Period.

The Calculation Agent will calculate the amount of interest (the "***Interest Amount***") payable on the Floating Rate Notes for the relevant Interest Period by applying the Rate of Interest to:

(A) in the case of Floating Rate Notes which are represented by a Global Note, the aggregate outstanding nominal amount of the Notes represented by such Global Note; or

(B) in the case of Floating Rate Notes in definitive form, the Calculation Amount;

and, in each case multiplying such sum by (i) the applicable Day Count Fraction, (ii) if the applicable Final Terms specify "Range Accrual" to be applicable to such Interest Payment Date, the applicable Range Accrual Factor (which shall be determined in accordance with Condition 4(k) (Calculation of Range Accrual Factor) below), and rounding the resultant figure to the nearest sub-unit of the relevant Specified Currency, half of any such sub-unit being rounded upwards or otherwise in accordance with applicable market convention. Where the Specified Denomination of a Floating Rate Note in definitive form is a multiple of the Calculation Amount, the Interest Amount payable in respect of such Notes shall be the product of the amount (determined in the manner provided above) for the Calculation Amount and the amount by which the Calculation Amount is multiplied to reach the Specified Denomination, without any further rounding.

In these Conditions, "***Day Count Fraction***" means, in respect of the calculation of an amount of interest in accordance with Condition 4(c) for any Interest Period:

(A) if "***Actual/Actual***" or "***Actual/Actual (ISDA)***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the actual number of days in the Interest Period divided by 365 (or, if any portion of that Interest Period falls in a leap year, the sum of (A) the actual number of days in that portion of the Interest Period falling in a leap year divided by 366 and (B) the actual number of days in that portion of the Interest Period falling in a non-leap year divided by 365);

(B) if "***Actual/365 (Fixed)***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the actual number of days in the Interest Period divided by 365;

(C) if "***Actual/365 (Sterling)***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the actual number of days in the Interest Period divided by 365 or, in the case the last day of the Interest Period falls in a leap year, 366;

(D) if "***Actual/360***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the actual number of days in the Interest Period divided by 360;

(E) if "***30/360***", "***360/360***" or "***Bond Basis***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the number of days in the Interest Period divided by 360, calculated on a formula basis as follows:

$$\text{Day Count Fraction} = \frac{[360 \times (Y_2 - Y_1)] + [30 \times (M_2 - M_1)] + (D_2 - D_1)}{360}$$

where:

"Y_1" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Interest Period falls;

"Y_2" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period falls;

"M_1" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Interest Period falls;

"M_2" is the calendar month, expressed as number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period falls;

"D_1" is the first calendar day, expressed as a number, of the Interest Period, unless such number would be 31, in which case D_1 will be 30; and

"D_2" is the calendar day, expressed as a number, immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period, unless such number would be 31 and D_1 is greater than 29, in which case D_2 will be 30; and

(F) if "***30E/360***" or "***Eurobond Basis***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the number of days in the Interest Period divided by 360, calculated on a formula basis as follows:

$$\text{Day Count Fraction} = \frac{[360 \times (Y_2 - Y_1)] + [30 \times (M_2 - M_1)] + (D_2 - D_1)}{360}$$

where:

"Y_1" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Interest Period falls;

"Y_2" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period falls;

"M_1" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Interest Period falls;

"M_2" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period falls;

"D_1" is the first calendar day, expressed as a number, of the Interest Period, unless such number would be 31, in which case D_1 will be 30; and

"D_2" is the calendar day, expressed as a number, immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period, unless such number would be 31, in which case D_2 will be 30; and

(G) if "***30E/360 (ISDA)***" is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the number of days in the Interest Period divided by 360, calculated on a formula basis as follows:

$$\text{Day Count Fraction} = \frac{[360 \times (Y_2 - Y_1)] + [30 \times (M_2 - M_1)] + (D_2 - D_1)}{360}$$

where:

"***Y_1***" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Interest Period falls;

"***Y_2***" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period falls;

"***M_1***" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Interest Period falls;

"***M_2***" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period falls;

"***D_1***" is the first calendar day, expressed as a number, of the Interest Period, unless (i) that day is the last day of February or (ii) such number would be 31, in which case D_1 will be 30; and

"***D_2***" is the calendar day, expressed as a number, immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period, unless (i) that day is the last day of February but not the Maturity Date or (ii) such number would be 31, in which case D_2 will be 30.

(d) Notification of Rate of Interest and Interest Amount

The Bank will cause the Rate of Interest and each Interest Amount in respect of Floating Rate Notes, Fixed Rate Reset Notes or Range Accrual Notes for each Interest Period and the relevant Interest Payment Date to be notified by the Calculation Agent (in the case of Floating Rate Notes, Fixed Rate Reset Notes or Range Accrual Notes which are listed on the Official List of the UK Listing Authority (the "***Official List***") and admitted to trading on the London Stock Exchange plc (the "***London Stock Exchange***")) to the UK Listing Authority and the London Stock Exchange, and to be published in accordance with Condition 13 as soon as possible after their determination but in no event later than the fourth London Business Day thereafter. Each Interest Amount and Interest Payment Date so notified may subsequently be amended (or appropriate alternative arrangements made by way of adjustment) without notice in the event of an extension or shortening of the Interest Period. For the purposes of this subparagraph (v), the expression "***London Business Day***" means a day (other than a Saturday or a Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments and are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in London.

(e) Linear Interpolation

Where Linear Interpolation is specified as being applicable in respect of an Interest Period in the applicable Final Terms, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period shall be calculated by the Calculation Agent by straight line linear interpolation by reference to two rates based on the relevant Reference Rate (where Screen Rate Determination is specified as applicable in the applicable Final Terms) or the relevant Floating Rate Option (where ISDA Determination is specified as applicable in the applicable Final Terms), one of which shall be determined as if the Designated Maturity were the period of time for which rates are available next shorter than the length of the relevant Interest Period and the other of which rates are available next longer than the length of the relevant Interest Period provided however that if there is no rate available for the period of time next shorter or, as the case

may be, next longer, then the Calculation Agent shall determine such rate at such time and by reference to such sources as it determines appropriate.

"**Designated Maturity**" means, in relation to Screen Rate Determination, the period of time designated in the Reference Rate.

(f) Certificates to be Final

All certificates, communications, opinions, determinations, calculations, quotations and decisions given, expressed, made or obtained for the purposes of the provisions of this Condition 4, by the Agent or the Calculation Agent (if applicable), shall (in the absence of wilful default, bad faith or manifest error) be binding on the Bank, the Agent, the Calculation Agent (if applicable), the other Paying Agents and all Noteholders and Couponholders and (in the absence as aforesaid) no liability to the Noteholders or the Couponholders shall attach to the Agent or Calculation Agent (if applicable) in connection with the exercise or non-exercise by them of their powers, duties and discretions pursuant to such provisions.

(g) Minimum Rate of Interest and/or Maximum Rate of Interest

If the applicable Final Terms specifies a Minimum Rate of Interest for any Interest Period or Reset Period then, in the event that the Rate of Interest in respect of any such Interest Period or Reset Period determined in accordance with the following provisions is less than such Minimum Rate of Interest, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period or Reset Period shall be such Minimum Rate of Interest.

If the applicable Final Terms specifies a Maximum Rate of Interest for any Interest Period or Reset Period then, in the event that the Rate of Interest in respect of any such Interest Period or Reset Period determined in accordance with the following provisions is greater than such Maximum Rate of Interest, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period or Reset Period shall be such Maximum Rate of Interest.

(h) Interest on Zero Coupon Notes

Where a Zero Coupon Note becomes due and payable prior to the Maturity Date and is not paid when due, the amount due and repayable shall be the amount determined in accordance with Condition 5(g) as its Amortised Face Amount. As from the Maturity Date, any overdue principal of such Note shall bear interest at a rate per annum equal to the Accrual Yield specified in the applicable Final Terms.

(i) Accrual of Interest

Each Note (or in the case of the redemption of part of a Note, that part only of such Note) will cease to bear interest (if any) from the due date for its redemption unless, upon due presentation thereof, payment of principal is improperly withheld or refused. In such event, interest will continue to accrue at the rate as provided herein.

(j) Interest Act (Canada) Disclosure

For the purpose of disclosure pursuant to the *Interest Act* (Canada), where interest is required to be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year or any other period of time that is less than a calendar year, the yearly rate of interest which is equivalent to the Rate of Interest for any period of less than one calendar year may be determined by multiplying such Rate of Interest by a fraction, the numerator of which is the actual number of days in the 12-month period constituting such calendar year and the

denominator of which is 360 or such other period of time that is less than a calendar year, as the case may be.

The Bank confirms that it fully understands and is able to calculate the effective annual rate of interest applicable to each Note based on the methodology for calculating per annum rates provided for in the paragraph above if applicable. The Bank hereby irrevocably agrees not to plead or assert, whether by way of defence or otherwise, in any proceeding relating to each Note, that the interest payable under each Note and the calculation thereof has not been adequately disclosed to the Issuer pursuant to Section 4 of the *Interest Act* (Canada).

(k) Calculation of the Range Accrual Factor

This Condition 4(k) is applicable to Fixed Rate Notes or Floating Rate Notes to which Range Accrual is specified to be applicable in the applicable Final Terms ("**Range Accrual Notes**").

The "**Range Accrual Factor**" means in respect of an Interest Period, an amount calculated by the Calculation Agent in accordance with the following formula:

$$\frac{N1}{N2}$$

For the purposes of this Condition 4(k):

"**Calculation Day**" means, in respect of each Interest Period, each calendar day falling within such Interest Period.

"**Cap**" means, in respect of a Relevant Rate for any relevant Interest Period, the per annum rate specified in the applicable Final Terms.

"**Common Valid Date**" means each day that is a Business Day in each Relevant Financial Centre.

"**Constant Maturity Swap**" means the swap transaction in the Specified Currency with a maturity of the Specified Maturity.

"**First Reference Rate**" means the Range Accrual Reference Rate specified in the applicable Final Terms and determined in accordance with these Conditions.

"**Floor**" means, in respect of a Relevant Rate for any relevant Interest Period, the per annum rate specified in the applicable Final Terms.

"**N1**" means, in respect of any relevant Interest Period, the number of Calculation Days during such Interest Period for which, in respect of a Single Range Accrual Note, the Relevant Rate, and, in respect of a Dual Range Accrual Note, each applicable Relevant Rate is (a) if specified in the applicable Final Terms that "greater than or equal to" shall apply, greater than or equal to the applicable Floor for that Interest Period (as determined by the Calculation Agent); or (b) if specified in the applicable Final Terms that "greater than" shall apply, greater than the applicable Floor (as determined by the Calculation Agent); and (x) if specified in the applicable Final Terms that "less than or equal to" shall apply, less than or equal to the applicable Cap for that Interest Period (as determined by the Calculation Agent); or (y) if specified in the applicable Final Terms that "less than" shall apply, less than the applicable Cap (as determined by the Calculation Agent);

"**N2**" means, in respect of each Interest Period, the number of Calculation Days during such Interest Period, as determined by the Calculation Agent.

"**Range Accrual Reference Rate**" means (i) LIBOR, (ii) EURIBOR, (iii) CDOR, (iv) CNH HIBOR, (v) HIBOR or (vi) Constant Maturity Swap, as specified in the applicable Final Terms.

"**Rate**" means, in respect of a Range Accrual Reference Rate specified in the applicable Final Terms, either:

(1) the offered quotation (if there is only one quotation on the Relevant Screen Page); or

(2) the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the fifth decimal place, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of the offered quotations (if there are two or more quotations on the Relevant Screen Page),

(in each case expressed as a percentage rate per annum) for the Range Accrual Reference Rate for the Specified Maturity and Specified Currency which appears or appear, as the case may be, on the Relevant Screen Page on which such Range Accrual Reference Rate is for the time being displayed at the Relevant Time in the Relevant Financial Centre on such Calculation Day. If such rate does not appear on the Relevant Screen Page at the Relevant Time in the Relevant Financial Centre on such Calculation Day, the Calculation Agent will in its sole and absolute discretion, determine such rate (or a method for determining such rate) for such Calculation Day, taking into consideration all available information and acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner;

provided that: (i) in respect of a Single Range Accrual Note (as specified in the applicable Final Terms), (A) subject to proviso (B) below, if any Calculation Day is not a Business Day in the Relevant Financial Centre, the rate for such Calculation Day shall be determined in respect of the immediately preceding Business Day in the Relevant Financial Centre; and (B) in respect of each Interest Period, the Relevant Rate in respect of each Calculation Day from, and including, the fifth Business Day in the Relevant Financial Centre or such other Business Day (such date being the "**Rate Cut-off Date**" for such Interest Period) prior to the Interest Payment Date falling immediately after the end of such Interest Period to, and including, the last Calculation Day of such Interest Period, shall be deemed to be the rate in respect of the Rate Cut-off Date; and (ii) in respect of a Single Range Accrual (as specified in the applicable Final Terms) where Constant Maturity Swap Spread is specified to be applicable in the Final Terms and in respect of Terms and Conditions of the Notes of a Dual Range Accrual Note (as specified in the applicable Final Terms), (A) subject to proviso (B) below, if any Calculation Day is not a Common Valid Date, the rate in respect of a Reference Rate for such Calculation Day shall be determined in respect of the immediately preceding Business Day in the Relevant Financial Centre for such Reference Rate; and (B) in respect of each Interest Period, the Relevant Rate in respect of each Calculation Day from, and including, the seventh Common Valid Date or such other Common Valid Date specified in the applicable Final Terms (such date being the "**Rate Cut-off Date**" for such Interest Period) prior to the Interest Payment Date falling immediately after the end of such Interest Period to, and including, the last Calculation Day of such Interest Period, shall be deemed to be the rate for such Reference Rate in respect of the Rate Cut-off Date.

"**Relevant Rate**" means either:

(a) where Single Range Accrual Note is specified to be applicable in the Final Terms either:

(i) the Rate as determined in accordance with these Conditions; or

(ii) where Constant Maturity Swap Spread is specified to be applicable in the Final Terms, the Rate in respect of the First Reference Rate minus the Rate in respect of the Second Reference Rate, as determined in accordance with these Conditions; or

(b) where Dual Range Accrual Note is specified to be applicable in the Final Terms, each Rate determined in accordance with these Conditions provided that where Constant Maturity Swap Spread is specified to be applicable in the Final Terms, the Relevant Rate will be calculated as the Rate in respect of the First Reference Rate minus the Rate in respect of the Second Reference Rate, as determined in accordance with these Conditions.

"**Second Reference Rate**" means the Range Accrual Reference Rate specified in the applicable Final Terms and determined in accordance with the Conditions.

"**Specified Currency**" means the currency in which the Notes are denominated unless otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms in relation to Range Accrual items thereof.

(l) Benchmark Discontinuation

(i) Independent Adviser

If a Benchmark Event occurs in relation to an Original Reference Rate when any Rate of Interest (or any component part(s) thereof) remains to be determined by reference to such Original Reference Rate, then the Issuer shall use its reasonable endeavours to appoint and consult with an Independent Adviser, as soon as reasonably practicable, with a view to the Issuer determining a Successor Rate, failing which an Alternative Rate (in accordance with Condition 4(l)(ii)) and, in either case, an Adjustment Spread if any (in accordance with Condition 4(l)(iii)) and any Benchmark Amendments (in accordance with Condition 4(l)(iv)).

An Independent Adviser appointed pursuant to this Condition 4(l) shall act in good faith as an expert and (in the absence of bad faith or fraud) shall have no liability whatsoever to the Issuer, the Fiscal Agent, the Paying Agents, the Noteholders or the Couponholders for any determination made by it or for any advice given to the Issuer in connection with any determination made by the Issuer, pursuant to this Condition 4(l).

(ii) Successor Rate or Alternative Rate

If the Issuer, following consultation with the Independent Adviser and acting in good faith, determines that:

(A) there is a Successor Rate, then such Successor Rate shall (subject to adjustment as provided in Condition 4(l)(iii)) subsequently be used in place of the Original Reference Rate to determine the Rate of Interest (or the relevant component part(s) thereof) for all future payments of interest on the Notes (subject to the operation of this Condition 4(l)); or

(B) there is no Successor Rate but that there is an Alternative Rate, then such Alternative Rate shall (subject to adjustment as provided in Condition 4(l)(iii)) subsequently be used in place of the Original Reference Rate to determine the Rate of Interest (or the relevant component part(s) thereof) for all future payments of interest on the Notes (subject to the operation of this Condition 4(l)).

(iii) Adjustment Spread

If the Issuer, following consultation with the Independent Adviser and acting in good faith, determines (i) that an Adjustment Spread is required to be applied to the Successor Rate or the Alternative Rate (as the case may be) and (ii) the quantum of, or a formula or methodology for determining, such Adjustment Spread, then such Adjustment Spread shall be applied to the Successor Rate or the Alternative Rate (as the case may be).

(iv) Benchmark Amendments

If any Successor Rate, Alternative Rate or Adjustment Spread is determined in accordance with this Condition 4(l) and the Issuer, following consultation with the Independent Adviser and acting in good faith, determines (i) that amendments to these Conditions and/or the Agency Agreement are necessary to ensure the proper operation of such Successor Rate, Alternative Rate and/or Adjustment Spread (such amendments, the "Benchmark Amendments") and (ii) the terms of the Benchmark Amendments, then the Issuer shall, subject to giving notice thereof in accordance with Condition 4(l)(v), without any requirement for the consent or approval of Noteholders, vary these Conditions and/or the Agency Agreement to give effect to such Benchmark Amendments with effect from the date specified in such notice.

In connection with any such variation in accordance with this Condition 4(l)(iv), the Issuer shall comply with the rules of any stock exchange on which the Notes are for the time being listed or admitted to trading.

(v) Notices, etc.

Any Successor Rate, Alternative Rate, Adjustment Spread and the specific terms of any Benchmark Amendments, determined under this Condition 4(l) will be notified promptly by the Issuer to the Fiscal Agent and the Calculation Agent and, in accordance with Condition 13, the Noteholders. Such notice shall be irrevocable and shall specify the effective date of the Benchmark Amendments, if any.

No later than one Business Day following the date of notifying the Fiscal Agent of the same, the Issuer shall deliver to the Fiscal Agent a certificate signed by two Authorised Signatories of the Issuer:

(A) confirming (i) that a Benchmark Event has occurred, (ii) the Successor Rate or, as the case may be, the Alternative Rate and, (iii) where applicable, any Adjustment Spread and/or the specific terms of any Benchmark Amendments, in each case as determined in accordance with the provisions of this Condition 4(l); and

(B) certifying that the Benchmark Amendments are necessary to ensure the proper operation of such Successor Rate, Alternative Rate and/or Adjustment Spread.

The Fiscal Agent shall display such certificate at its offices for inspection by the Noteholders at all reasonable times during normal business hours.

The Successor Rate or Alternative Rate and the Adjustment Spread (if any) and the Benchmark Amendments (if any) specified in such certificate will (in the absence of manifest error or bad faith in the determination of the Successor Rate or Alternative Rate and the Adjustment Spread (if any) and the Benchmark Amendments (if any)) be binding on the Issuer, the Fiscal Agent, the Calculation Agent, the Paying Agents and the Noteholders.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Condition 4(l), no Successor Rate, Alternative Rate or Adjustment Spread will be adopted, nor will any other amendments of the terms and conditions of any Series of Senior Notes be made to effect the Benchmark Amendments if and to the extent that, in the

determination of the Bank, the same could reasonably be expected to either (A) prejudice the qualification of the relevant Series of Bail-inable Notes as TLAC or (B) result in the Superintendent treating the next Interest Payment Date or Reset Date, as the case may be, as the effective maturity of the Series of Senior Notes, rather than the relevant Maturity Date, except with the prior approval of the Superintendent.

(vi) Survival of Original Reference Rate

Without prejudice to the obligations of the Issuer under Condition 4(l) (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv), the Original Reference Rate and the fallback provisions provided for in Conditions 4(b), 4(c)(ii)(A), 4(c)(ii)(B) or 4(c)(ii)(C), as the case may be, will continue to apply unless and until the Calculation Agent has been notified of the Successor Rate or the Alternative Rate (as the case may be), and any Adjustment Spread (if applicable) and Benchmark Amendments, in accordance with Condition 4(l)(v).

(viii) *Definitions:*

As used in this Condition 4(l):

"**Adjustment Spread**" means either a spread (which may be positive or negative), or the formula or methodology for calculating a spread, in either case, which the Issuer, following consultation with the Independent Adviser and acting in good faith, determines is required to be applied to the Successor Rate or the Alternative Rate (as the case may be) to reduce or eliminate, to the extent reasonably practicable in the circumstances, any economic prejudice or benefit (as the case may be) to Noteholders and Couponholders as a result of the replacement of the Original Reference Rate with the Successor Rate or the Alternative Rate (as the case may be) and is the spread, formula or methodology which:

(A) in the case of a Successor Rate, is formally recommended in relation to the replacement of the Original Reference Rate with the Successor Rate by any Relevant Nominating Body; or

(B) (if no such recommendation has been made, or in the case of an Alternative Rate) the Issuer determines, following consultation with the Independent Adviser and acting in good faith, is recognised or acknowledged as being the industry standard for over-the-counter derivative transactions which reference the Original Reference Rate, where such rate has been replaced by the Successor Rate or the Alternative Rate (as the case may be); or

(C) (or if the Issuer determines that no such industry standard is recognised or acknowledged) the Issuer, in its discretion, following consultation with the Independent Adviser and acting in good faith, determines to be appropriate.

"**Alternative Rate**" means an alternative to the benchmark or screen rate which the Issuer determines in accordance with Condition 4(l)(ii) has replaced the Original Reference Rate in customary market usage in the international debt capital markets for the purposes of determining rates of interest (or the relevant component part(s) thereof) for the same interest period and in the same Specified Currency as the Notes.

"**Benchmark Amendments**" has the meaning given to it in Condition 4(l)(iv).

"**Benchmark Event**" means:

(A) the Original Reference Rate ceasing be published for a period of at least five Business Days or ceasing to exist; or

(B) a public statement by the administrator of the Original Reference Rate that it will, by a specified date within the following six months, cease publishing the Original Reference Rate permanently or indefinitely and no successor administrator has been appointed that will continue publication of the Original Reference Rate; or

(C) a public statement by the supervisor of the administrator of the Original Reference Rate that the Original Reference Rate has been or will, by a specified date within the following six months, be permanently or indefinitely discontinued; or

(D) a public statement by the supervisor of the administrator of the Original Reference Rate that means the Original Reference Rate will be prohibited from being used or that its use will be subject to restrictions or adverse consequences, in each case within the following six months; or

(E) it has become unlawful for any Paying Agent, the Calculation Agent or the Issuer to calculate any payments due to be made to any Noteholder using the Original Reference Rate.

"**Independent Adviser**" means an independent financial institution of international repute or an independent financial adviser with appropriate expertise appointed by the Issuer under Condition 4(l)(i).

"**Original Reference Rate**" means the benchmark and screen rate (as applicable) originally specified for the purposes of determining the Rate of Interest (or any component part(s) thereof) on the Notes.

"**Relevant Nominating Body**" means, in respect of a benchmark and screen rate (as applicable):

(A) the central bank for the currency to which the benchmark and screen rate (as applicable) relates, or any central bank or other supervisory authority which is responsible for supervising the administrator of the benchmark and screen rate (as applicable); or

(B) any working group or committee sponsored by, chaired or co-chaired by or constituted at the request of (w) the central bank for the currency to which the benchmark and screen rate (as applicable) relates, (x) any central bank or other supervisory authority which is responsible for supervising the administrator of the benchmark and screen rate (as applicable), (y) a group of the aforementioned central banks or other supervisory authorities or (z) the Financial Stability Board or any part thereof.

"**Successor Rate**" means a successor to or replacement of the Original Reference Rate which is formally recommended by any Relevant Nominating Body.

5. Redemption and Purchase

(a) At Maturity

Unless previously repaid, each Note will be repaid by the Bank at its Final Redemption Amount (which shall be par, save in the case of Zero Coupon Notes in respect of which the Final Redemption Amount shall be the amount per Calculation Amount specified in the applicable Final Terms, which amount is at least equal to 100 per cent. of such Calculation Amount) in the relevant Specified Currency on the Maturity Date specified in the applicable Final Terms.

(b) Early Redemption for Tax Reasons

If, (i) as a result of any change in the federal laws of Canada or any province, territory or political division thereof or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax or, in the case of Senior Notes whose Branch of Account (as defined below) is located outside Canada, of the country in which such branch is located or any political division thereof or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax, or any change in the interpretation or administration of any such laws, which change becomes effective on or after the latest Issue Date of the Notes of this Series, the Bank would, on the occasion of the next payment due in respect of the Notes of this Series, be required to pay additional amounts as provided in Condition 9, (ii) such obligation cannot be avoided by the Bank taking reasonable measures available to it (which, for greater certainty, does not include substitution of the obligor under the Notes) and (iii) such circumstances are evidenced by the delivery to the Agent of a certificate signed by two senior officers of the Bank stating that said circumstances prevail and describing the facts leading thereto and an opinion of independent legal advisers of recognised standing to the effect that said circumstances prevail, the Bank may at its option, having given not more than the maximum period nor less than the minimum period of notice specified in the applicable Final Terms to the Agent and, in accordance with Condition 13, to the holders of the Notes of this Series, at any time or, if the Notes of this Series bear interest at a floating rate, on any Interest Payment Date redeem all, but not some only, of the Notes of this Series each at its Early Redemption Amount referred to in paragraph (e) below, together, if appropriate, with interest accrued to, but excluding, the date of redemption; provided further that in respect of Bail-inable Notes, where the redemption would lead to a breach of the Bank's total loss absorbing capacity ("**TLAC**") requirements such redemption will be subject to the prior approval of the Superintendent. Upon the expiry of the aforementioned notice, the Bank shall be bound to redeem the Notes of this Series accordingly.

(c) Redemption due to TLAC Disqualification Event:

This Condition 5(c) applies to Bail-inable Notes only.

Where a TLAC Disqualification Event Call is specified as being applicable in the relevant Final Terms relating to a Series of Bail-inable Notes, the Bank may, at its option, on not less than the minimum period of notice and not more than the maximum period of notice specified in the applicable Final Terms and in accordance with Condition 13, redeem all but not less than all of the outstanding Notes of the Series prior to their stated maturity date on, or within 90 days after, a TLAC Disqualification Event (as defined below) at the Early Redemption Amount, plus any accrued but unpaid interest to (but excluding) the date fixed for redemption. Such redemption will be subject to the prior approval of the Superintendent.

A "**TLAC Disqualification Event**" means the Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions ("**OSFI**") has advised the Bank in writing that the Series of Bail-inable Notes will no longer be recognised in full as TLAC under the guideline for total loss absorbing capacity for banks in Canada in effect from time to time, as interpreted by the Superintendent, provided that a TLAC Disqualification Event shall not occur where the exclusion of the relevant Series of Bail-inable Notes from the Bank's TLAC requirement is due to the remaining maturity of such Series of Bail-inable Notes being less than any period prescribed by any relevant eligibility criteria applicable as of the Issue Date of the first Tranche of such Series of Bail-inable Notes.

(d) Early Redemption for Illegality

In the case of Range Accrual Notes (as defined in Condition 4(k) above), in the event that the Bank determines in good faith that the performance of the Bank's obligations under the Notes or any arrangement made to hedge the Bank's obligations under the Notes have or will become unlawful,

illegal or otherwise prohibited in whole or in part as a result of compliance with any applicable present or future law, rule, regulation, judgment, order or directive of any governmental, administrative, legislative or judicial authority or power, or in the interpretation thereof, the Bank having given not less than the minimum period and not more than the maximum period of notice specified in the applicable Final Terms to Noteholders in accordance with Condition 13 (which notice shall be irrevocable), may, on expiry of such notice redeem all, but not some only, of the Notes, each Note being redeemed at the Early Redemption Amount together (if appropriate) with interest accrued to (but excluding) the date of redemption. In respect of Bail-inable Notes, where the redemption would lead to a breach of the Bank's TLAC requirements, such redemption will be subject to the prior approval of the Superintendent.

(e) Early Redemption at the Option of the Bank (Bank Call Option)

*This Condition 5(e) applies to Notes which are subject to redemption prior to the Maturity Date at the option of the Bank (other than for taxation reasons), such option being referred to as a "**Bank Call**". The applicable Final Terms contains provisions applicable to any Bank Call and must be read in conjunction with this Condition 5(e) for full information on any Bank Call. In particular, the applicable Final Terms will identify the Optional Redemption Date(s), the Optional Redemption Amount, whether Notes are redeemable in part and any minimum or maximum amount of Notes which can be redeemed.*

If, and to the extent a Bank Call Option is specified in the applicable Final Terms as being applicable, the Bank may, having given not more than the maximum period of notice nor less than the minimum period of notice specified in the applicable Final Terms to the Agent and, in accordance with Condition 13, the holders of the Notes of this Series (which notice shall be irrevocable), redeem all or, if specified in the Final Terms, some only of the Notes then outstanding on the Optional Redemption Date(s) and at the Optional Redemption Amount(s) indicated in the applicable Final Terms together, if appropriate, with interest accrued to but excluding such Optional Redemption Date(s), provided that in respect of Bail-inable Notes where the redemption would lead to a breach of the Bank's TLAC requirements, such redemption will be subject to the prior approval of the Superintendent. In the event of a partial redemption of such Notes, such redemption must be for an amount not less than the Minimum Redemption Amount nor greater than the Maximum Redemption Amount, as indicated in the applicable Final Terms and in the case of a partial redemption of Definitive Notes, the Notes to be redeemed will be selected individually by lot not more than 60 days prior to the date fixed for redemption and a list of the Notes called for redemption will be published in accordance with Condition 13 not less than 15 days prior to such date. In the case of a partial redemption of Global Notes, the relevant Notes will be redeemed in accordance with the rules of Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg, such partial redemption to be reflected in the records of Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg as either a pool factor or a reduction in nominal amount, at their discretion.

(f) Early Redemption at the Option of the Noteholders (Noteholder Put Option)

This Condition 5(f) is not applicable to Bail-inable Notes.

This Condition 5(f) applies to Notes which are subject to redemption prior to the Maturity Date at the option of the Noteholder, such option being referred to as a "Noteholder Put". The applicable Final Terms contains provisions applicable to any Noteholder Put and must be read in conjunction with this Condition 5(f) for full information on any Noteholder Put. In particular, the applicable Final Terms will identify the Optional Redemption Date(s) and the Optional Redemption Amount.

If, and to the extent a Noteholder Put Option is specified in the applicable Final Terms as being applicable, upon the holder of any Note giving to the Bank in accordance with Condition 13 not more than the maximum period nor less than the minimum period of notice specified in the applicable Final

Terms (which notice shall be irrevocable) the Bank will, upon the expiry of such notice, redeem subject to, and in accordance with, the terms specified in the applicable Final Terms in whole (but not in part) such Note on the Optional Redemption Date and at the Optional Redemption Amount indicated in the applicable Final Terms together, if appropriate, with interest accrued to but excluding such Optional Redemption Date.

In order to exercise such option, the Noteholder must, on any Business Day falling within the notice period, in the case of a Definitive Note held within Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg, deposit the relevant Note (together, in the case of a Definitive Note that is not a Zero Coupon Note, with all unmatured Coupons appertaining thereto other than any Coupon maturing on or before the Optional Redemption Date (failing which the provisions of Condition 6(c) shall apply) during normal business hours at the specified office of any Paying Agent together with a duly completed early redemption notice ("**Put Notice**") in the form which is available from the specified office of any Paying Agent.

In the case of a Global Note or Definitive Note held through Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg, to exercise the right to require the redemption of the Note, the Noteholder of the Note must, within the notice period, give notice to the Paying Agent of such exercise in accordance with the standard procedures of Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg (which may include notice being given on such Noteholder's instruction by Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg or any common depositary or common safekeeper, as the case may be, for them to the Paying Agent by electronic means) in a form acceptable to Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg from time to time. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Notes represented by a Global Note shall be deemed to be deposited with a Paying Agent for purposes of this Condition 5(f) at the time a Put Notice has been received by the Paying Agent in respect of such Notes. No Note so deposited and option exercised may be withdrawn (except as provided in the Agency Agreement).

The Noteholder of a Note may not exercise such Put Option in respect of any Note which is the subject of an exercise by the Issuer of its option to redeem such Note under either Condition 5(b), (c), (d) or (e).

(g) Early Redemption Amounts

For the purposes of paragraph (b) above and Condition 10, Notes will be redeemed at an amount (the "***Early Redemption Amount***") calculated as follows:

(i) in the case of Notes with a Final Redemption Amount equal to the Issue Price, at the Final Redemption Amount thereof; or

(ii) in the case of Notes (other than Zero Coupon Notes) with a Final Redemption Amount which is or may be greater than the Issue Price or which is payable in a Specified Currency other than that in which the Notes are denominated, at the amount set out in, or determined in the manner set out in, the applicable Final Terms or, if no such amount or manner is set out in the applicable Final Terms, at their nominal amount; or

(iii) in the case of Zero Coupon Notes, at an amount (the "***Amortised Face Amount***") equal to:

(A) the sum of (x) the Reference Price specified in the applicable Final Terms and (y) (a) if Compounding Accrual is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the product of the Accrual Yield specified in the applicable Final Terms (compounded annually or semi-annually or as otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms) being applied to the Reference Price or (b) if Linear Accrual is specified in the applicable Final Terms, the product of the Accrual Yield (without any compounding) being applied to the Reference Price

where:

"**Accrual Yield**" means the rate specified as such in the applicable Final Terms; and

"**Reference Price**" means the amount specified as such in the applicable Final Terms, which is the product of the Issue Price and the Calculation Amount,

from (and including) the Issue Date to (but excluding) the date fixed for redemption or (as the case may be) the date upon which such Note becomes due and repayable.

Where any such calculation is to be made for a period of less than a full year, it shall be made on the basis of the Day Count Fraction specified in the applicable Final Terms which will be either (i) 30 / 360 (in which case the numerator will be equal to the number of days (calculated on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of 12 months of 30 days each) from (and including) the Issue Date of the first Tranche of the Notes to (but excluding) the date fixed for redemption or (as the case may be) the date upon which such Note becomes due and repayable and the denominator will be 360) or (ii) Actual/360 (in which case the numerator will be equal to the actual number of days from (and including) the Issue Date of the first Tranche of the Notes to (but excluding) the date fixed for redemption or (as the case may be) the date upon which such Note becomes due and repayable and the denominator will be 360) or (iii) Actual/365 (Fixed), Actual/365 or Actual/Actual (in which case the numerator will be equal to the actual number of days from (and including) the Issue Date of the first Tranche of the Notes to (but excluding) the date fixed for redemption or (as the case may be) the date upon which such Note becomes due and repayable and the denominator will be 365) or (iv) Actual/Actual (ICMA) (as defined in Condition 4(a) except that the Accrual Period will commence on (and include) the Issue Date of the first Tranche of the Notes and end on (but exclude) the date fixed for redemption or (as the case may be) the date upon which the Notes become due and repayable); or

(B) if the amount payable in respect of any Zero Coupon Note upon redemption of such Zero Coupon Note pursuant to paragraph (b) above or upon its becoming due and repayable as provided in Condition 10 is not paid or available for payment when due, the amount due and repayable in respect of such Zero Coupon Note shall be the Amortised Face Amount of such Zero Coupon Note calculated as provided above as though the references in clause (A) to the date fixed for redemption or the date upon which the Zero Coupon Note becomes due and repayable were replaced by references to the date (the "***Reference Date***") which is the earlier of:

(1) the date on which all amounts due in respect of the Note have been paid; and

(2) the date on which the full amount of the moneys repayable has been received by the Agent and notice to that effect has been given in accordance with Condition 13.

The calculation of the Amortised Face Amount in accordance with this clause (B) will continue to be made, after as well as before judgment, until the Reference Date unless the Reference Date falls on or after the Maturity Date, in which case the amount due and repayable shall be the nominal amount of such Note together with interest at a rate per annum equal to the Accrual Yield.

(h) Purchases

Subject to any applicable legal or regulatory restrictions, the Bank may at any time purchase Notes (provided that, in the case of Definitive Notes, all unmatured Coupons appertaining thereto are surrendered therewith) in the open market or by private treaty at any price, provided that in respect of Bail-inable Notes where the purchase would lead to a breach of the Bank's TLAC requirements, such purchase will be subject to the prior approval of the Superintendent. If purchases are made by tender, tenders must be available to all holders of Notes of the relevant Series alike.

(i) Cancellation

Subject to the next following sentence, all Notes redeemed or purchased by the Bank as aforesaid will be cancelled forthwith, together with all unmatured Coupons attached thereto or surrendered or purchased therewith, and may not be resold or reissued. Notwithstanding the foregoing, BMO Capital Markets shall be permitted to purchase Notes and hold the same without requirement for cancellation and to reissue and resell the same, provided such reissue or resale is (or are) done by BMO Capital Markets in its capacity as Lead Manager and/or Stabilisation Manager of the issue of the Senior Notes and for any other appropriate purpose in connection with such roles, including, subject to regulatory requirements, market-making activities in respect of the Notes.

(j) Further Provisions applicable to Redemption Amount

References herein to "***Redemption Amount***" shall mean, as appropriate, the Final Redemption Amount and the Early Redemption Amount.

(k) Redemption Irrevocable

A notice of redemption under this Condition 5 shall be irrevocable provided that Bail-inable Notes continue to be subject to a Bail-in Conversion prior to their repayment in full**.**

6. Payments

(a) Method of Payment

Subject as provided below:

(i) Payments in a Specified Currency other than euro, U.S. dollars or Renminbi will be made by credit or transfer to an account in the Specified Currency (which, in the case of a payment in Japanese yen to a non-resident of Japan, shall be a non-resident account) maintained by the payee with, or, at the option of the payee, by a cheque in such Specified Currency drawn on, a bank in the principal financial centre of the country of such Specified Currency.

(ii) Payments in euro will be made by credit or transfer to a euro account (or any other account to which euro may be credited or transferred) with a bank specified by the payee or, at the option of the payee, by a euro cheque.

(iii) Payments in U.S. dollars will be made by transfer to a U.S. dollar account maintained by the payee outside of the United States or by a cheque drawn on a United States bank.

(iv) Payments in in Renminbi will be made by transfer to a Renminbi account maintained by or on behalf of the payee with a bank in the RMB Settlement Centre in accordance with applicable laws, rules and regulations and guidelines issued from time to time (including all applicable laws and regulations with respect to the settlement in Renminbi in the RMB Settlement Centre).

In no event will payment of amounts due in respect of Notes be made by a cheque mailed to an address, or by transfer or credit to an account at a bank located, in the United States (which expression, as used in this Condition 6, means the United States of America, including the States and the District of Columbia, its territories, its possessions and other areas subject to its jurisdiction).

Payments will be subject in all cases to (i) any fiscal or other laws and regulations applicable thereto in the place of payment but without prejudice to the provisions of Condition 9 and (ii) any withholding or deduction required pursuant to an agreement described in Section 1471(b) of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "**Code**") or otherwise imposed pursuant to Sections 1471 through 1474 of the Code, any regulations or agreements thereunder, any official interpretations thereof, or (without prejudice to the provisions of Condition 9) any law implementing an intergovernmental approach thereto.

(b) Payments in respect of Global Notes

Payment of principal and interest (if any) in respect of Global Notes will (subject as provided below) be made by transfer to an account in the Specified Currency maintained by the relevant clearing system. Payment of principal will be made against presentation or surrender of the Global Note and a record of each payment so made will be made on such Global Note by or on behalf of the Agent. Such record shall be *prima facie* evidence that the payment in question has been made.

Subject as provided below, (i) the relevant clearing system shall be the only person entitled to receive payments in respect of Notes represented by such Global Note and the Bank will be discharged by payment to, or to the order of the relevant clearing system in respect of each amount so paid and (ii) each of the persons shown in the records of the relevant clearing system as the beneficial owner of a particular nominal amount of Notes must look solely to Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, for his share of each payment so made by the Bank. In certain limited circumstances in which payments in respect of a Global Note are not made when due, owners of beneficial interests in such Note may become entitled to proceed directly against the Bank. See "Issue Procedures".

(c) Payments in respect of Definitive Notes

Payments of principal in respect of Definitive Notes will (subject as provided below) be made in the Specified Currency in the manner provided in paragraph (a) above against surrender of Definitive Notes and payments of interest in respect of the Definitive Notes will (subject as provided below) be made in the Specified Currency in the manner provided in paragraph (a) above against surrender of Coupons, in each case at the specified office of any Paying Agent outside the United States.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Definitive Notes are denominated or payable in U.S. dollars, payments in respect of the Definitive Notes will only be made at the specified office of a Paying Agent in the United States (which expression, as used herein, means the United States of America (including the States and the District of Columbia, its territories, its possessions and other areas subject to its jurisdiction)) if:

(i) the Bank has appointed Paying Agents with specified offices outside the United States with the reasonable expectation that such Paying Agents would be able to make payment at such specified offices outside the United States of the full amount owing in respect of the Notes in the manner provided above when due;

(ii) payment of the full amount owing in respect of the Notes at such specified offices outside the United States is illegal or effectively precluded by exchange controls or other similar restrictions; and

(iii) such payment is then permitted under United States law without involving, in the opinion of the Bank, adverse tax consequences to the Bank.

Fixed Rate Notes in definitive form (other than Long Maturity Notes (as defined below)) must be presented for payment together with all unmatured Coupons appertaining thereto (which expression shall for this purpose include Coupons to be issued on exchange of matured Talons) failing which the amount of any missing unmatured Coupon (or, in the case of payment not being made in full, the same proportion of the aggregate amount of such missing unmatured Coupon as the sum so paid bears to the sum due) will be deducted from the sum due for payment. Each amount of principal so deducted will be paid in the manner mentioned above against surrender of the relative missing Coupon at any time after the Relevant Date (as defined in Condition 9) in respect of such principal and before the expiration of the relevant period of prescription under Condition 12. Upon any such Fixed Rate Note becoming due and repayable prior to its Maturity Date, all unmatured Talons (if any) appertaining thereto will become void and no further Coupons will be issued in respect thereof.

Upon the date on which any Floating Rate Note or Long Maturity Note in definitive form becomes due and repayable, all unmatured Coupons and Talons (if any) relating thereto (whether or not attached) shall become void and no payment shall be made in respect thereof. A "***Long Maturity Note***" is a Fixed Rate Note (other than a Fixed Rate Note which on issue had a Talon attached) whose Nominal Amount on issue is less than the aggregate interest payable thereon provided that such Note shall cease to be a Long Maturity Note on the Interest Payment Date on which the aggregate amount of interest remaining to be paid after that date is less than the Nominal Amount of such Note.

(d) Payment of Accrued Interest on Redemption

If the due date for redemption of any Definitive Note is not an Interest Payment Date, interest (if any) accrued in respect of such Note from and including the preceding Interest Payment Date or, as the case may be, the Interest Commencement Date shall be payable only against surrender of the relevant Definitive Note.

(e) Payment Business Day

If the date for payment of any amount in respect of any Note or Coupon is not a Payment Business Day, the holder thereof shall not be entitled to payment until the next following Payment Business Day in the relevant place and shall not be entitled to further interest or other payment in respect of such delay.

For these purposes, "***Payment Business Day***" means a day which is:

(i) a day (other than a Saturday or a Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in:

(A) the relevant place of presentation (in the case of Notes in definitive form only); and

(B) any Additional Financial Centre (other than TARGET2) specified in the applicable Final Terms;

(ii) if TARGET2 is specified as an Additional Financial Centre in the applicable Final Terms, a day which is a TARGET2 Business Day; and

(iii) either (1) in relation to any sum payable in a Specified Currency other than euro or Renminbi, a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments in the principal financial centre of the country of the relevant Specified Currency (which, in the case of Australian dollars or New Zealand dollars, shall be Sydney or Auckland, respectively) or (2) in relation to any sum payable in euro, a day which is a TARGET2 Business Day or (3) in relation to any sum payable in Renminbi, a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which banks and foreign exchange markets are open for business and settlement of Renminbi payments in the RMB Settlement Centre.

"**Additional Financial Centre(s)**" means the additional financial centre(s) that are relevant to determining whether a day is a Payment Business Day, as specified in the applicable Final Terms.

(f) Payment in an Alternative Currency

If Alternative Currency Payment is specified as applicable in the Final Terms and the Bank is due to make a payment in a currency (the "***original currency***") other than Renminbi in respect of any Note or Coupon and the original currency is not available on the foreign exchange markets due to the imposition of exchange controls, the original currency's replacement or disuse or other circumstances beyond the Bank's control, the Bank will be entitled to satisfy its obligations in respect of such payment by making payment in the Alternative Currency specified in the applicable Final Terms on the basis of the spot exchange rate (the "***Alternative Currency FX Rate***") at which the original currency is offered in exchange for the Alternative Currency in the London foreign exchange market (or, at the option of the Bank or its designated Calculation Agent, in the foreign exchange market of any other financial centre which is then open for business) at noon, London time, two Business Days prior to the date on which payment is due or, if the Alternative Currency FX Rate is not available on that date, on the basis of a substitute exchange rate determined by the Bank or by its designated Calculation Agent acting in its absolute discretion from such source(s) and at such time as it may select. For the avoidance of doubt, the Alternative Currency FX Rate or substitute exchange rate as aforesaid may be such that the resulting Alternative Currency amount is zero and in such event no amount of the Alternative Currency or the original currency will be payable. Any payment made in the Alternative Currency or non-payment in accordance with this paragraph will not constitute an Event of Default under Condition 10.

(g) Interpretation of Principal and Interest

Any reference in these Terms and Conditions to principal in respect of the Notes shall be deemed to include, as applicable:

(i) any additional amounts which may be payable under Condition 9 in respect of principal;

(ii) the Optional Redemption Amount of the Notes;

(iii) the Final Redemption Amount of the Notes;

(iv) the Early Redemption Amount of the Notes;

(v) in relation to Zero Coupon Notes, the Amortised Face Amount; and

(vi) any premium and any other amounts which may be payable under or in respect of the Notes.

Any reference in these Terms and Conditions to interest in respect of the Notes shall be deemed to include, as applicable, any additional amounts which may be payable under Condition 9 in respect of interest.

(h) *RMB Notes*

If the Bank is due to make a payment in Renminbi in respect of any Note or Coupon, and if by reason of Inconvertibility, Non-transferability or Illiquidity, the Bank is not able, or it would be impracticable for it, to satisfy payments of principal or interest (in whole or in part) in respect of the Notes when due in Renminbi in an RMB Settlement Centre, the Bank may, on giving not less than five or more than 30 days' irrevocable notice to the Noteholders prior to the due date for payment, settle any such payment (in whole or in part) in U.S. dollars on the due date at the U.S. Dollar Equivalent of any such Renminbi denominated amount.

Any payment made in under such circumstances in U.S. dollars will not constitute an Event of Default under Condition 10 or trigger the Bank's indemnification obligation under Condition 18.

For the purpose of this Condition:

"**Calculation Agent**" means the Agent or such other entity specified in the applicable Final Terms;

"**CNY Dealer**" means an independent foreign exchange dealer of international repute active in the Renminbi exchange market in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre(s);

"**Governmental Authority**" means, in respect of the relevant RMB Settlement Centre, any *de facto* or *de jure* government (or any agency or instrumentality thereof), court, tribunal, administrative or other governmental authority or any other entity (private or public) charged with the regulation of the financial markets (including the central bank) of the relevant RMB Settlement Centre;

"**Illiquidity**" means where the general Renminbi exchange market in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre becomes illiquid and, as a result of which, the Bank cannot obtain sufficient Renminbi in order to satisfy its obligation to pay interest and principal (in whole or in part) in respect of the Notes as determined by the Bank in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner following consultation with two CNY Dealers;

"**Inconvertibility**" means the occurrence of any event that makes it impossible for the Bank to convert any amount due in respect of the Notes into Renminbi in the general Renminbi exchange market in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre, other than where such impossibility is due solely to the failure of the Bank to comply with any law, rule or regulation enacted by any Governmental Authority (unless such law, rule or regulation is enacted after the Issue Date of the first Tranche of the Notes and it is impossible for the Bank, due to an event beyond its control, to comply with such law, rule or regulation);

"**Non-transferability**" means the occurrence of any event that makes it impossible for the Bank to deliver Renminbi between accounts inside the relevant RMB Settlement Centre or from an account inside the relevant RMB Settlement Centre to an account outside the relevant RMB Settlement Centre, other than where such impossibility is due solely to the failure of the Bank to comply with any law, rule or regulation enacted by any Governmental Authority (unless such law, rule or regulation is enacted after the Issue Date of the first Tranche of Notes and it is impossible for the Bank, due to an event beyond its control, to comply with such law, rule or regulation);

"**Rate Calculation Business Day**" means a day (other than a Saturday, Sunday or public holiday) on which commercial banks are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange) in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre and in New York City;

"**Rate Calculation Date**" means the day which is two Rate Calculation Business Days before the due date of the relevant amount under these Conditions;

"**Relevant Valuation Time**" means the time specified as such in the applicable Final Terms;

"**Spot Rate**" means the spot/U.S. dollar exchange rate for the purchase of U.S. dollars with Renminbi in the over-the-counter Renminbi exchange market in the relevant RMB Settlement Centre for settlement in two Rate Calculation Business Days, as determined by the Calculation Agent at or around the Relevant Valuation Time on the Rate Calculation Date, on a deliverable basis by reference to Reuters Screen Page TRADCNY3, or if no such rate is available, on a non-deliverable basis by reference to Reuters Screen Page TRADNDF. If neither rate is available, the Calculation Agent will determine the Spot Rate at or around the Relevant Valuation Time on the Rate Calculation Date as the most recently available Renminbi/U.S. dollar official fixing rate for settlement in two Rate Calculation Business Days reported by The State Administration of Foreign Exchange of the PRC, which is reported on the Reuters Screen Page CNY=SAEC. Reference to a page on the Reuters Screen means the display page so designated on the Reuter Monitor Money Rates Service (or any successor service) or such other page as may replace that page for the purpose of displaying a comparable currency exchange rate;

"**U.S. Dollar Equivalent**" means the Renminbi amount converted into U.S. dollars using the Spot Rate for the relevant Rate Calculation Date.

All notifications, opinions, determinations, certificates, calculations, quotations and decisions given, expressed, made or obtained for the purposes of the provisions of this Condition 6(h) by the Calculation Agent, will (in the absence of wilful default, bad faith or manifest error) be binding on the Bank, the Agent, the other Paying Agents and all Noteholders and Couponholders.

7. Paying Agents

The names of the initial Paying Agents and their initial specified offices are set out below and on the Notes. If any additional or other Paying Agents are appointed in connection with any Series, the names of such Paying Agents will be specified in Part B of the applicable Final Terms. In acting under the Agency Agreement, the Paying Agents will act solely as agents of the Bank and do not assume any obligations or relationships of agency or trust to or with the Noteholders or Couponholders, except that (without affecting the obligations of the Bank to the Noteholders and Couponholders to pay principal of and interest on the Notes) funds received for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Notes shall be held by it in trust for the Noteholders and/or Couponholders until the expiration for the relevant period of prescription under Condition 12. The Bank agrees to perform and observe the obligations imposed upon it under the Agency Agreement and to cause the Paying Agents to perform and observe the obligations imposed upon them under the Agency Agreement.

The Bank is entitled to vary or terminate the appointment of any Paying Agent and/or appoint additional or other paying agents and/or approve any change in the specified office through which any Paying Agent acts, provided that:

(i) so long as any Notes are outstanding, there will at all times be an Agent;

(ii) so long as any Notes are outstanding, there will at all times be a Paying Agent (which may be the Agent) with a specified office in a leading financial centre approved by the Agent in continental Europe; and

(iii) so long as any Notes are listed and/or admitted to trading on any stock exchange (or other relevant listing authority), there will at all times be a Paying Agent (which may be the Agent) with a specified office in each location as may be required by the rules and regulations of the relevant stock exchange (or other relevant listing authority).

In addition, the Bank shall forthwith appoint a Paying Agent having a specified office in New York City in the circumstances described in the second paragraph of Condition 6(c). Any variation, termination, appointment or change shall only take effect (other than in the case of insolvency, when it shall be of immediate effect) after not less than 30 nor more than 45 days' prior notice thereof shall have been given to the Agent and the Noteholders in accordance with Condition 13 provided that no such variation, termination, appointment or change shall take effect (except in the case of insolvency) within 15 days before or after any Interest Payment Date. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Bank may (after consultation with the Agent) appoint one or more additional paying agents for a specific Series of Notes, which shall be specified in Part B of the applicable Final Terms and whose appointment shall be of immediate effect without any further requirement to give notice to the Noteholders.

8. Exchange of Talons

On and after the Interest Payment Date on which the final Coupon comprised in any Coupon sheet matures, the Talon (if any) forming part of such Coupon sheet may be surrendered at the specified office of the Agent or any other Paying Agent in exchange for a further Coupon sheet including (if such further Coupon sheet does not include Coupons to, and including, the final date for the payment of interest due in respect of the Note to which it appertains) a further Talon, subject to the provisions of Condition 6(c) and Condition 12. Each Talon shall, for the purposes of these Terms and Conditions, be deemed to mature on the Interest Payment Date on which the final Coupon comprised in the relative Coupon sheet matures.

9. Taxation

All payments of principal and interest in respect of the Notes and Coupons by or on behalf of the Bank will be made without withholding or deduction for, or on account of, any present or future taxes, duties, assessments or charges of whatever nature imposed or levied by or on behalf of the Government of Canada or any province, territory or political division thereof or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax or, in the case of Notes whose Branch of Account is located outside Canada, of the country in which such branch is located (the "***Branch Country***") or any political division thereof or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax, unless the withholding or deduction of such taxes, duties, assessments or charges is required by law or by the interpretation or administration thereof. In that event, the Bank will pay such additional amounts as may be necessary in order that the net amounts receivable by the Noteholders or the Couponholders, as the case may be, after such withholding or deduction shall equal the respective amounts of principal or interest which would have been receivable in respect of the Notes or Coupons, as the case may be, in the absence of such withholding or deduction; except that no such additional amount shall be payable with respect to any Note or Coupon:

(i) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a Noteholder or Couponholder who is liable to such taxes, duties, assessments or charges in respect of such Note or Coupon by reason of such Noteholder or Couponholder having some connection with Canada or, in the case of Senior Notes whose Branch of Account is located outside Canada, the Branch Country, other than the mere holding or use outside Canada or the Branch Country, or ownership as a non-resident of Canada or the Branch Country, of such Note or Coupon;

(ii) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a Noteholder or Couponholder, in respect of whom such tax, duty, assessment or governmental charge is required to be withheld or deducted by reason of such Noteholder or Couponholder's failure to comply with any certification, identification, documentation or other reporting requirement concerning the nationality, residence, identity or connection with Canada of such Noteholder or Couponholder if (a) compliance is required by law or by the interpretation of administration thereof as a precondition to, exemption from, or reduction in the rate of, the tax, assessment or other charge and (b) the Bank has given the Noteholder, Couponholder or, if such Noteholder or Couponholder is not the beneficial owner of the Note or Coupon in question, the beneficial owner of such Note or Coupon, at least 30 days' notice that the Noteholder, Couponholder or beneficial owner will be required to provide such certification, identification, documentation or other requirement;

(iii) presented for payment more than 30 days after the Relevant Date except to the extent that the holder thereof would have been entitled to such additional amount on presenting the same for payment on or before such thirtieth day, assuming that day to have been a Payment Business Day (as defined in Conditin 6(e));

(iv) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a Noteholder or Couponholder in respect of whom such tax, duty, assessment or governmental charge is required to be withheld or deducted by reason of such Noteholder or Couponholder or other person entitled to payments under the Notes or Coupons, as the case may be, being a person with whom the Bank is not dealing at arm's length (within the meaning of the *Income Tax Act* (Canada)); or

(v) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a Noteholder or Couponholder who is, or who does not deal at arm's length with a person who is, a "specified shareholder" (as defined in subsection 18(5) of the *Income Tax Act* (Canada)) of the Bank.

As used herein, the "***Relevant Date***" means:

(A) the date on which such payment first becomes due; or

(B) if the full amount of the moneys payable has not been received by the Agent on or prior to such due date, the date on which, the full amount of such moneys having been so received, notice to that effect shall have been given to the Noteholders in accordance with Condition 13.

If the Bank becomes subject generally at any time to any taxing jurisdiction other than or in addition to Canada or the Branch Country, references in Condition 5(b) and this Condition 9 to Canada or the Branch Country shall be read and construed as references to Canada or the Branch Country and/or to such other jurisdiction(s).

Any reference in these Terms and Conditions to "***principal***" and/or "***interest***" in respect of the Notes shall be deemed also to refer to any additional amounts which may be payable under this Condition 9. Unless the context otherwise requires, any reference in these Terms and Conditions to "**principal**" shall include any premium payable in respect of a Note, or Redemption Amount and any other amounts in the nature of principal payable pursuant to these Terms and Conditions and "***interest***" shall include all amounts payable pursuant to Condition 4 and any other amounts in the nature of interest payable pursuant to these Terms and Conditions.

10. Events of Default

Each holder of Notes is entitled to declare his Note due and payable, and the relevant Note shall thereupon become immediately repayable at its nominal amount, together with accrued interest payable thereon, on the occurrence of any one of the following events (the "***Events of Default***"):

(a) In relation to Senior Notes that are not Bail-inable Notes:

(i) if the Bank shall make default in payment of any principal on the due date therefor and such default shall have continued for a period of five days;

(ii) if the Bank shall make default in payment of any interest on the due date therefor and such default shall have continued for a period of 30 days; or

(iii) if the Bank shall become insolvent or bankrupt or subject to the provisions of the Winding-up and Restructuring Act (Canada) ("**WURA**"), or any statute hereafter enacted in substitution therefor, as such Act, or substituted Act, as may be amended from time to time, or if the Bank goes into liquidation, either voluntary or under an order of a court of competent jurisdiction, passes a resolution for the winding-up, liquidation or dissolution of the Bank, is ordered wound-up or otherwise acknowledges its insolvency.

(b) In relation to Bail-inable Notes:

(i) if default is made for more than 30 Payment Business Days in the payment on the due date of interest or principal in respect of any such Notes; or

(ii) if the Bank becomes insolvent or bankrupt or subject to the provisions of WURA, or any statute hereafter enacted in substitution therefor, as such Act, or substituted Act, as may be amended from time to time, or if the Bank goes into liquidation, either voluntary or under an order of a court of competent jurisdiction, passes a resolution for the winding-up, liquidation or dissolution of the Bank, is ordered wound-up or otherwise acknowledges its insolvency.

Noteholders may only exercise rights under this Condition 10(b)(i) and 10(b)(ii) in respect of Bail-inable Notes where an order has not been made pursuant to subsection 39.13(1) of the CDIC Act in respect of the Bank. Notwithstanding the exercise of any rights by Noteholders under this Condition 10 in respect of Bail-inable Notes, Bail-inable Notes will continue to be subject to conversion in whole or in part – by means of a transaction or series of transactions and in one or more steps – into common shares under subsection 39.2(2.3) of the CDIC Act prior to their repayment in full. A conversion of Bail-inable Notes into common shares under subsection 39.2(2.3) of the CDIC Act will not be an Event of Default. By its acquisition of the Bail-inable Notes, each holder (including each holder of a beneficial interest in any Bail-inable Note), to the extent permitted by law, waives any and all claims, in law and/or in equity, against the Agent (in each case solely in its capacity as Agent), for, agrees not to initiate a suit against the Agent in respect of, and agrees that the Agent shall not be liable for, any action that the Agent takes, or abstains from taking, in either case in accordance with the conversion of Bail-inable Notes into common shares under subsection 39.2(2.3) of the CDIC Act.

Upon the occurrence of any Event of Default, the Bank will waive any requirement that presentment, demand for payment, service of legal process or any similar procedure be made at the branch of the Bank which issued the Notes.

11. Replacement of Notes, Coupons and Talons

Should any Note, Coupon or Talon be mutilated, defaced or destroyed or be lost or stolen, it may be replaced at the specified office of any Paying Agent (or such other place as may be notified to the Noteholders), in accordance with all applicable laws and regulations, upon payment by the claimant of the expenses incurred by the Bank or the Paying Agent, in connection therewith and on such terms as to evidence, indemnity, security or otherwise as the Bank or the Paying Agent may require. Mutilated or defaced Notes, Coupons or Talons must be surrendered before replacements will be issued.

12. Prescription

Subject to applicable law, the Notes and Coupons will become void unless presented for payment within a period of two years from the Relevant Date (as defined in Condition 9) relating thereto. Any moneys paid by the Bank to the Agent for the payment of principal or interest in respect of the Notes and remaining unclaimed when the Notes or Coupons become void shall forthwith be repaid to the Bank and all liability with respect thereto shall thereupon cease. There shall not be included in any Coupon sheet issued on exchange of a Talon any Coupon the claim for payment in respect of which would be void pursuant to this Condition 12 or Condition 6(c) or any Talon which would be void pursuant to Condition 6(c).

13. Notices

Notices in respect of the Notes shall be published in one leading English language newspaper with circulation in the United Kingdom (which is expected to be the *Financial Times*) or, if this is not practicable, one other such English language newspaper as the Bank, in consultation with the Agent, shall decide. The Bank shall also ensure that notices are duly published in a manner which complies with the rules and regulations of any stock exchange (or other relevant listing authority) on which the Notes are for the time being listed, including publication on the website of the relevant stock exchange or relevant authority if required by those rules. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been given on the date of the first publication.

There may, so long as the Global Notes for this Series are held in their entirety on behalf of Euroclear, Clearstream, Luxembourg or any other agreed clearing system, be substituted for such publication in such newspaper the delivery of the relevant notice to the relevant clearing system for communication by it to the holders of the Notes of this Series. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been given to the holders of the Notes of this Series on the day on which the said notice was given to the relevant clearing system.

Any notice to the Agent shall be given to it in writing at its specified office or to such other address as shall have been notified to the holders of Notes and Coupons. Notwithstanding the foregoing, while any of the Notes of this Series are represented by a Global Note, such notice may be given by any holder of a Note of this Series to the Agent via Euroclear, Clearstream, Luxembourg or any other agreed clearing system, as the case may be, in such manner as the Agent and the relevant clearing system may approve for this purpose.

Notice to be given to the Bank by any Noteholder shall be in writing and given by lodging the same, together with the relevant Note or Notes, with the Agent. While any of the Notes are represented by a Global Note, such notice may be given by any accountholder to the Agent through Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, may approve for this purpose.

14. Modification

The rights of the outstanding Noteholders may in certain circumstances be modified. For that purpose, among others, the Agency Agreement contains provisions making extraordinary resolutions binding upon

all Noteholders. "***Extraordinary resolution***" is defined, in effect, as (i) a resolution passed at a meeting of Noteholders of the same Series by the favourable votes of the holders of not less that 66 2/3 per cent. of the nominal amount of the Notes voted on the resolution at such meeting at which a quorum, as specified in the Agency Agreement, is present or (ii) one or more instruments in writing signed by the holders of not less than 66 2/3 per cent. in nominal amount of the outstanding Notes.

The consent or approval of the Noteholders shall not be required in the case of amendments to the Conditions pursuant to Condition 4(l) to vary the method or basis of calculating the rate or rates or amount of interest or the basis for calculating any Interest Amount in respect of the Notes or for any other variation of these Conditions and/or the Agency Agreement required to be made in the circumstances described in Condition 4(l), where the Issuer has delivered to the Fiscal Agent a certificate pursuant to Condition 4(l)(v).

The Agency Agreement and the Conditions, Notes, Coupons and Talons may be amended by the Bank and Paying Agents, without the consent of the Noteholders or Couponholders, for the purpose of curing any ambiguity or curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained therein or in any manner which may be necessary or desirable and which shall not adversely affect the interests of the outstanding Noteholders.

Notwithstanding anything in this Condition 14, where any amendment, modification or other variance that can be made to Bail-inable Notes may affect their recognition by the Superintendent as TLAC, that amendment, modification or variance will require the prior approval of the Superintendent.

15. Currency Indemnity

Subject to Condition 6(f) or (h), if, under any applicable law and whether pursuant to a judgment being made or registered against the Bank or for any other reason, any payment under or in connection with the Notes is made or is to be satisfied in a currency (the "***other currency***") other than that in which the relevant payment is expressed to be due (the "***required currency***") under the Notes then, to the extent that the payment (when converted into the required currency at the rate of exchange on the date of payment) falls short of the amount due under the terms of the Notes, the Bank shall, as a separate and independent obligation, indemnify and hold harmless the relevant Noteholder against the amount of such shortfall. For the purpose of this Condition 15, "***rate of exchange***" means the noon spot rate on the London foreign exchange market on the relevant date to purchase the required currency with the other currency as determined by the Agent.

16. Further Issues

The Bank may from time to time in its sole discretion, without the consent of the holders of Notes or Coupons create and issue further Notes having the same terms and conditions as such Notes in all respects (or in all respects except for the first payment of interest, if any, on them and/or the denomination thereof) so as to form a single series with the Notes of any particular Series, and references in these Conditions to "***Notes***" shall be construed accordingly.

17. Waiver of set-off and netting rights

Bail-inable Notes are not subject to set-off or netting rights.

18. Branch of Account

This Condition 18 applies to Senior Notes only.

For the purposes of the Bank Act the branch of account of the Bank shall be either Toronto or London as specified in the Final Terms (the "***Branch of Account***") for the deposits evidenced by this Note. Senior Notes, irrespective of the Branch of Account specified in the Final Terms, are obligations of the Bank.

This Note will be paid without the necessity of first being presented for payment at the Branch of Account.

If the Branch of Account is not in Canada, the Bank may change the Branch of Account for the deposits evidenced by this Note, upon not less than seven days' prior notice to its holder given in accordance with Condition 13 and upon and subject to the following terms and conditions:

(i) if this Note is denominated in Japanese yen, the Branch of Account shall not be in Japan;

(ii) the Bank shall indemnify and hold harmless the holders of the Senior Notes and Coupons relating thereto against any tax, duty, assessment or governmental charge which is imposed or levied upon such holder as a consequence of such change, and shall pay the reasonable costs and expenses of the Agent in connection with such change; and

(iii) notwithstanding (ii) above, no change of the Branch of Account may be made unless immediately after giving effect to such change (a) no Event of Default, and no event, which, after the giving of notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing and (b) payments of principal and interest on Notes of this Series and Coupons relating thereto to holders thereof (other than Excluded Holders, as hereinafter defined) shall not, in the opinion of counsel to the Bank, be subject to any taxes, as hereinafter defined, to which they would not have been subject had such change not taken place. For the purposes of this section, an "***Excluded Holder***" means a holder of a Note of this Series or Coupon relating thereto who is subject to taxes by reason of his having some connection with the Relevant Jurisdiction (as hereinafter defined) other than the mere holding or use of a Note of this Series or Coupon as a non-resident of such Relevant Jurisdiction. "***Relevant Jurisdiction***" means and includes Canada, its provinces or territories and the jurisdiction in which the new Branch of Account is located, and "***taxes***" means and includes any tax, duty, assessment or other governmental charge imposed or levied in respect of the payment of the principal of the Notes of this Series or interest thereon for or on behalf of a Relevant Jurisdiction or any authority therein or thereof having power to tax.

19. Governing Law

The Agency Agreement, the Notes and the Coupons are governed by, and shall be construed in accordance with, the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Except as otherwise specified in the applicable Final Terms, the net proceeds from each issue of Notes will be added to the general funds of the Bank.

BANK OF MONTREAL

Name and Incorporation

Charter and Head Office

The Bank started business in Montréal in 1817 and was incorporated in 1821 by an Act of Lower Canada as the first Canadian chartered bank. Since 1871, the Bank has been a chartered bank under the *Bank Act* (Canada) (the **Bank Act**), and is named in Schedule I of the Bank Act. The Bank Act is the charter of the Bank and governs its operations.

The Bank's head office is 129 rue Saint Jacques, Montréal, Québec, H2Y 1L6. Its executive offices are 100 King Street West, 1 First Canadian Place, Toronto, Ontario, M5X 1A1.

Principal Activities and Markets

BMO Financial Group is a highly diversified financial services provider based in North America. The Bank offers a broad range of products and services directly and through Canadian and non-Canadian subsidiaries, offices, and branches. As of October 31, 2017, the Bank had more than 12 million customers and more than 45,000 full-time equivalent employees. The Bank has over 1,500 bank branches in Canada and the United States and operates internationally in major financial markets and trading areas through its offices in 27 jurisdictions. BMO Financial Corp. ("**BFC**") is based in Chicago and wholly owned by the Bank. BFC operates primarily through its subsidiary BMO Harris Bank N.A. ("**BHB"**), which provides banking, financing, investing, and cash management services in select markets in the United States Midwest. The Bank provides a full range of investment dealer services through entities, including BMO Nesbitt Burns Inc., a major fully integrated Canadian investment dealer, and BMO Capital Markets Corp., the Bank's wholly-owned registered securities dealer in the United States.

The Bank conducts business through three operating groups: Personal and Commercial Banking ("**P&C**"), made up of Canadian P&C and United States P&C; Wealth Management; and BMO Capital Markets. Canadian P&C operates across Canada, offering a broad range of products and services, including banking, lending and treasury management. Operating predominately in the United States Midwest under the BMO Harris brand, United States P&C offers personal and commercial clients banking, lending, and treasury management products and services. Wealth Management serves a full range of client segments from mainstream to ultra-high net worth and institutional, with a broad offering of wealth management products and services including insurance. Wealth Management is a global business with an active presence in markets across Canada, the United States, Europe and Asia. BMO Capital Markets is a North American-based financial services provider offering a complete range of products and services to corporate, institutional and government clients. These include equity and debt underwriting, corporate lending and project financing, mergers and acquisitions advisory services, securitization, treasury management, risk management, debt and equity research, and institutional sales and trading. With approximately 2,500 professionals in 30 locations around the world, including 16 offices in North America, BMO Capital Markets works proactively with clients to provide innovative and integrated financial solutions. Corporate Services consists of Corporate Units and Technology and Operations ("**T&O**"). Corporate Units provide enterprise-wide expertise and governance support in a variety of areas, including strategic planning, risk management, finance, legal and regulatory compliance, marketing, communications and human resources. T&O manages, maintains and provides governance over information technology, operations services, real estate and procurement for the Bank.

For additional information regarding the Bank's businesses, see pages 27, 30 and 45 to 62 of the 2017 MD&A and Note 26 to the 2017 Financial Statements, which are incorporated by reference herein.

Competition

Canada's financial services industry is highly competitive. It includes 32 domestic banks and 53 foreign bank subsidiaries, branches, and lending branches, as well as a multitude of trust companies, credit unions, online and full-service brokerages, investment dealers, life and property and casualty insurance companies, mutual fund dealers, and large monoline financial institutions, among others. The Bank competes with most of these companies in some form in its different businesses. However, the Bank's range of services compares to those of the other five major Canadian banks, and they are the Bank's direct competitors in almost all its businesses and markets in Canada. The Bank was the fourth largest chartered bank in Canada as measured by assets, equity, and market capitalization as at October 31, 2017. In North America, the Bank is the eighth largest bank by assets, tenth largest by equity and by market capitalization as at October 31, 2017. The Bank is the second largest Canadian bank as measured by retail branches in Canada and the United States.

The financial services industry continues its rapid change, as technology enables new non-traditional entrants to compete in certain segments of banking, in some cases with reduced regulatory requirements and oversight. New entrants may leverage new technologies, advanced data and analytical tools, lower cost to serve and/or faster processes to challenge traditional banks, including new business models in retail payments, consumer and commercial lending, foreign exchange and low-cost investment advisory services. Failure to keep pace with these new technologies and competition may potentially impact the Bank's overall revenues and earnings if customers choose the services of these new market entrants. While the Bank closely monitors technology disruptors, the Bank also continues to adapt by increasing its investment in technology and innovation to keep pace with dynamic client expectations. This includes improving its mobile and internet banking capabilities, building new branch formats, and refining its decisioning, analytic and modelling data and tools and, where appropriate, bringing new and enhanced customer solutions to market. The Bank further mitigates this risk by providing its customers with access to banking services across different channels, focusing on improving customer loyalty and trust, enhancing its advanced data and analytical tools, and leveraging current and future partnerships in order to deliver an exceptional customer experience with reduced costs and simplified processes. However, matching the pace of innovation exhibited by new and differently-situated competitors may require the Bank and policy-makers to adapt at a faster pace.

The six major banks play a prominent role in the Canadian banking system, each maintaining an extensive and evolving branch network, augmented by automated banking machines, as well as telephone, internet, and mobile banking systems. The industry is considered mature with moderate growth, supported by an overall focus on productivity, investments in infrastructure and technology integration. Although the major banks offer similar products and services, they compete on offerings, pricing, service models and technology, as well as entering into partnerships and alliances, with a goal of gaining a strategic advantage and serving customers better. Increased competition is also evident in the drive for scale and operating efficiencies.

The Bank's Canadian P&C banking business is one of the top five in Canada in all core product areas, providing a full range of lending, deposit and treasury management products and services to eight million customers. Canadian P&C continues to focus on strengthening customer loyalty in order to generate growth in a competitive environment, as well as increasing digital capabilities to augment the customer experience. Personal Banking provides customers with a wide range of products and services, including chequing and savings accounts, credit cards, mortgages, creditor insurance and everyday financial and investment advice. The Bank's employees are focused on providing exceptional service to all of its customers every time they interact with the Bank.

Canadian P&C's award winning[1] commercial bank possesses a strong competitive position in commercial lending, with a number two market share for business loans of up to $25 million. Commercial Banking provides small business and commercial banking customers with a broad suite of commercial products and services, including business deposit accounts, commercial credit cards, business loans and commercial mortgages, cash management solutions, foreign exchange and specialized banking programs. The Bank's commercial bankers work closely with its customers to identify solutions which will help them grow and manage their business.

In Canada, Wealth Management competes with domestic banks, trust companies, global private banks, investment counselling firms, and mutual fund companies. Wealth Management's Canadian businesses have strong brand recognition and market position. Wealth Management has a strong market share in each of its full-service brokerage, online brokerage, and private banking businesses and investment funds. In the United States, Wealth Management competes primarily in United States personal wealth and asset management, with the Bank's strategic presence in the Chicago and Milwaukee area and in select high-growth wealth markets across the country. In Europe, the Middle East and Africa (EMEA), Wealth Management competes primarily in asset management through BMO Global Asset Management.

BMO Capital Markets operates in a highly competitive environment and its businesses face a diverse range of competitors. Its success is based on a stable and integrated North American platform with a complementary international presence; leading expertise and relationships in strategic sectors and providing clients with integrated financial solutions using a full range of products; a unique ability to serve United States mid-sized clients and selectively larger clients; and strong risk management practices.

Competition in the United States is more complex than in Canada, given the market's size and activity, as well as personal and commercial banking competitors at the community, regional, and national level, plus other financial service providers. United States P&C has a significant footprint in eight states, primarily in six neighbouring states (Illinois, Wisconsin, Indiana, Minnesota, Missouri and Kansas). The commercial banking environment remains competitive, with tightened lending standards and continued pressure on pricing strategies given commercial loan growth opportunities. Relative to the Bank's peers, the Bank has a strong and proven commercial lending model, which has allowed it to build a strong national presence in key specialties such as financial institutions, dealer finance, and transport finance, and created a position of strength in its core footprint. Personal banking loan growth is expected to improve in retail and business banking, reflecting a strong commitment to improving the Bank's performance, particularly in its mortage business, where the Bank is working actively to redefine its sales model, streamline processes and optimize pricing. The Bank believes that in its retail banking transformation, along with improved product offerings, will help accelerate growth from customer deposits and improve share of wallet. As the Bank moves forward, the Bank intends to maintain a diversified and high-quality loan portfolio that adheres to the Bank's risk appetite, and the Bank expects its loss rates to remain stable and that its margins will benefit from fiscal 2017 interest rate increases, as well as further anticipated short-term rate increases. On the deposit side, the Bank expects strong consumer growth, with continued pressure on lower spread commercial deposits, as the Bank anticipates that large commercial clients will seek alternative investments in a rising rate environment. United States P&C is commited to a customer-focused growth strategy and the Bank is invested in improving the digital experience and providing the best-in-class products.

Consolidation has been underway in the financial services industry in Canada and the United States in recent years. This affects trust companies, mutual fund managers, life insurers, and credit unions. Canadian federal government policy discourages large banks from merging. It is uncertain whether this will change in the near future but further consolidation and increased competition in the financial services industry overall is likely.

---

[1] In 2017, the Bank was named the Best Commercial Bank in Canada by World Finance Magazine for the third consecutive year.

Supervision and Regulation in Canada

The Bank's activities in Canada are governed by the *Bank Act* (Canada).

Under the Bank Act, a bank can operate its regular banking business as well as some additional activities, such as dealing with real property and various information services. A bank is restricted when it undertakes certain activities, including fiduciary activities, dealing in securities, insurance activities, and personal property leasing. For example, other than for authorized types of insurance, a bank may not offer insurance products through its branch system or bank website.

The Bank Act grants a bank broad power to invest in the securities of other corporations and entities, but limits substantial investments. Under the Bank Act, a bank generally has a substantial investment in a body corporate when (1) the bank and entities controlled by the bank beneficially own more than 10 per cent. of the voting shares of the body corporate or (2) the bank and entities controlled by the bank beneficially own shares representing more than 25 per cent. of the total shareholders' equity of the body corporate. A bank can have a substantial investment in entities that meet the substantial investment requirements as set out in Part IX of the Bank Act. In certain cases, the Minister of Finance or the Superintendent of Financial Institutions (Canada) (the "**Superintendent**") must approve before making an investment.

The Superintendent is responsible to the Minister of Finance for administering the Bank Act. The Superintendent provides guidelines for disclosing a bank's financial information. The Superintendent must also examine each bank annually to ensure compliance with the Bank Act and that each bank is in sound financial condition. The Superintendent's examination report is submitted to the Minister of Finance.

The Bank's Canadian trust, loan and insurance subsidiaries are federally regulated financial institutions governed by the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) and the *Insurance Companies Act* (Canada), respectively, and under provincial laws in respect of their activities in the provinces. The Bank and its Canadian trust, loan and insurance subsidiaries are also subject to regulation by the Financial Consumer Agency of Canada ("**FCAC**"). The FCAC enforces consumer-related provisions of the federal statutes which govern these financial institutions. Certain activities of the Bank and its subsidiaries acting as securities brokers, dealers, underwriters and advisers are regulated in Canada under provincial securities legislation and by self-regulatory organizations such as the Investment Industry Regulatory Organization of Canada and the Mutual Fund Dealers Association of Canada.

Additional information about supervision and regulation in Canada is under the headings "Regulatory Capital Requirements" and "Capital Regulatory Developments" in the Enterprise-Wide Capital Management section on pages 69 to 71, "Regulatory Requirements" in the Risks That May Affect Future Results section on page 80, "Regulatory Developments" in the Liquidity and Funding Risk section on page 105, and "Legal and Regulatory Risk" on pages 109 to 111 of the 2017 MD&A, as well as under the heading "Capital Management" on pages 13 to 14 of the Third Quarter 2018 MD&A.

Supervision and Regulation in the United States

In the United States, the operations of the Bank and its subsidiaries are supervised, regulated, and examined by regulatory and government agencies at the federal and state level. As a foreign bank, the Bank is subject to various United States laws and regulations, including the United States International Banking Act of 1978, the United States Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, and related regulations. The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, including the Federal Reserve Banks (the "**Federal Reserve**"), and state banking regulators oversee the Bank's branch and office operations in the United States. The United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**SEC**"), the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, and state securities regulators regulate broker-dealer subsidiaries. The SEC and state securities regulators regulate registered investment advisor subsidiaries.

The Bank and its subsidiaries own two Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("**FDIC"**) insured depository institutions in the United States. These institutions engage in cash management, fiduciary activities, and commercial and retail banking. They are subject to examination by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency ("**OCC**"). The Federal Reserve generally needs to approve acquiring (a) more than 5 per cent. of voting shares, (b) control, or (c) all (or substantially all) of the assets of a bank holding company, bank, or savings association.

The Bank is also subject to the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act ("**Dodd-Frank**"). Dodd-Frank reforms include heightened consumer protection, revised regulation of over-the-counter derivatives markets, restrictions on proprietary trading and the ownership and sponsorship of private investment funds by banks and their affiliates (referred to as the "**Volcker Rule"**), imposition of heightened prudential standards, and broader application of leverage and risk-based capital requirements.

Dodd-Frank rulemaking may continue over the next several years. The conformance date for the Volcker Rule, which prohibits banking entities active in the United States and their affiliates from certain proprietary trading and specified relationships with private investment funds, was July 21, 2015. United States regulators extended until July 21, 2017 the requirement that banking entities, including the Bank and its subsidiaries, conform all of their investments in, and relationships with, private investment funds in place before December 31, 2013. The Bank completed a significant review of its operations and developed policies and procedures to meet both the July 21, 2015 deadline and the July 21, 2017 deadline, and now has systems in place to assess, monitor, and report on Volcker Rule compliance across the Bank's group.

G20 jurisdictions, including the United States, continue to implement new regulations as part of the over-the-counter ("**OTC**") derivatives regulatory reform program. Margin requirements for non-centrally cleared derivatives have been adopted in a number of jurisdictions, including Canada, Europe and the United States. Margin rules will require the exchange of variation margin and initial margin, both of which are designed to secure performance on non-centrally cleared derivatives transactions between covered entities. The Bank has been subject to variation margin rules since March 1, 2017 and will be subject to initial margin rules beginning no earlier than September 1, 2018 and no later than September 1, 2019. In a number of jurisdictions, OTC derivatives transactions must now be reported to designated trade repositories and clearing, execution and business conduct regulations continue to be implemented.

The Federal Reserve Board's rule for strengthening supervision and regulation of foreign banking organizations ("**FBO Rule**") implements Dodd-Frank's enhanced prudential standards and early remediation requirements for the United States operations of non-United States banks, such as the Bank. The FBO Rule established new requirements relating to an intermediate holding company structure, risk-based capital and leverage requirements, capital stress testing requirements, United States risk management and risk governance, liquidity risk management and liquidity stress testing frameworks. In December 2014, the Bank submitted to the Federal Reserve Board its implementation plan for meeting these requirements by the effective date (July 1, 2016). In accordance with the FBO Rule, BMO certified the Bank's compliance with the FBO Rule requirements to the Federal Reserve Board in July 2016.

The OCC has issued guidelines that establish heightened standards for large national banks with average total consolidated assets of US$50 billion or more, including BHB. The guidelines set out minimum standards for the design and implementation of a bank's risk governance framework and minimum standards for oversight of that framework by a bank's board of directors. The framework must ensure the bank's risk profile is easily distinguished and separate from that of its parent for risk management purposes. A bank's board of directors is responsible for informed oversight of, and providing credible challenge to, management's risk management recommendations and decisions. The Bank has implemented a plan to comply with these guidelines.

Additional information about supervision and regulation in the United States is found under the headings "Regulatory Capital Requirements" and "Capital Regulatory Requirements" in the Enterprise-Wide Capital Management section on pages 69 to 71, "Regulatory Developments" in the Risks That May Affect Future Results section on page 80, and "Legal and Regulatory Risk" on pages 109 to 111 of the 2017 MD&A.

International Supervision and Regulation

Outside Canada and the United States, each of the Bank's branches, agencies and subsidiaries must comply with the regulatory requirements of the country or jurisdiction where it conducts business. These include the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision capital, liquidity and prudential rules ("**Basel III**"), or local variations on Basel III, which are intended to strengthen the banking sector's capital and liquidity frameworks. Since the first quarter of 2013, regulatory capital requirements for the Bank have been determined on a Basel III basis.

Additional information about international supervision and regulation is found under the headings "Regulatory Capital Requirements", "Regulatory Capital Ratios", "Regulatory Capital Elements" and "Capital Regulatory Developments" in the Enterprise-Wide Capital Management section on pages 69 to 71, "Regulatory Requirements" in the "Risks That May Affect Future Results" section on page 80, and "Legal and Regulatory Risks" on pages 109 to 111 of the 2017 MD&A.

Significant Subsidiaries

As at October 31, 2017, the Bank, either directly or indirectly through its subsidiaries, controls the following significant operating subsidiaries:

Significant subsidiaries (1)	Head or principal office	Book value of shares owned by the Bank (Canadian $ in millions)
Bank of Montreal Capital Markets (Holdings) Limited and subsidiaries including:	London, England	307
BMO Capital Markets Limited	London, England	
Pyrford International Limited	London, England	
Bank of Montreal (China) Co. Ltd.	Beijing, China	432
Bank of Montreal Holding Inc. and subsidiaries, including:	Calgary, Canada	23,844
BMO Investments Limited	Hamilton, Bermuda	
BMO Reinsurance Limited	St. Michael, Barbados	
BMO Nesbitt Burns Holdings Corporation	Toronto, Canada	
BMO Nesbitt Burns Inc.	Toronto, Canada	
BMO Investments Inc.	Toronto, Canada	
BMO InvestorLine Inc.	Toronto, Canada	
Bank of Montreal Ireland plc	Dublin, Ireland	969
Bank of Montreal Mortgage Corporation	Calgary, Canada	2,967
BMO Mortgage Corp.	Vancouver, Canada	
BMO Financial Corp. and subsidiaries, including:	Chicago, United States	20,425
BMO Asset Management Corp. and subsidiaries	Chicago, United States	
BMO Capital Markets Corp.	New York, United States	
BMO Harris Bank National Association and subsidiaries, including:	Chicago, United States	
BMO Harris Investment Company LLC	Las Vegas, United States	
BMO Harris Financial Advisors, Inc.	Chicago, United States	
BMO Harris Financing, Inc. and subsidiaries	Chicago, United States	
CTC my CFO, LLC	Palo Alto, United States	
BMO Global Asset Management (Europe) Limited and subsidiaries, including:	London, England	729
F&C Asset Management plc and subisidiaries	London, England	
BMO Life Insurance Company and subsidiaries, including:	Toronto, Canada	1,059
BMO Life Holdings (Canada), ULC	Halifax, Canada	
BMO Life Assurance Company	Toronto, Canada	
BMO Trust Company	Toronto, Canada	788
BMO Trustee Asia Limited	Hong Kong, China	2
LGM (Bermuda) Limited and subsidiaries, including:	Hamilton, Bermuda	112
BMO Global Asset Management (Asia) Limited	Hong Kong, China	
LGM Investments Limited	London, England	

(1) Each subsidiary is incorporated or organized under the law of the state or country in which the principal office is situated, except for (a) BMO Financial Corp., BMO Asset Management Corp., BMO Capital Markets Corp., BMO Harris Financial Advisors, Inc., BMO Harris Financing, Inc., and CTC myCFO, LLC, which are incorporated under the laws of the State of Delaware, United States and (b) F&C Asset Management plc, which is incorporated under the laws of Scotland.

Issuer Ratings

The following table sets out ratings the Bank has received for its outstanding securities from the rating agencies, which are current to September 24, 2018.

	S&P	Moody's	DBRS	Fitch
Short-term instruments	A-1	P-1	R-1 (high)	F1+
New senior debt[1]	A-[4]	A2[5]	AA (low)[6]	AA-
Deposits & senior debt	A+	Aa2	AA	AA-
Subordinated debt	A-	Baa1	A (high)	A+
Subordinated debt – NVCC[2]	BBB+	Baa1	A (low)	A+
Preferred shares[3]	BBB / P-2	Baa3	Pfd-2 (high)	N/A
Preferred shares – NVCC[2,3]	BBB- / P-2 (low)	Baa3	Pfd-2	N/A
Trend/Outlook	Stable	Stable	Stable	Stable

Notes:
[1] Expected ratings of new bail-inable senior debt that is issued after September 23, 2018
[2] Non-viability contingent capital or NVCC
[3] It is the practice of S&P to present an issuer's preferred share ratings on both the global rating scale and on the Canadian national scale when listing the ratings for a particular issuer
[4] S&P is expected to assign issue-level ratings to the new bail-in-eligible senior debt, upon issuance, at one notch below the stand-alone credit profile of the Bank, subject to a review of the terms and conditions of the issue
[5] Moody's has assigned a provisional rating to the bail-in (junior senior unsecured) debt to be issued commencing September 23, 2018
[6] DBRS has created a new obligation named Bail-inable Senior Debt. This new obligation rating reflects the senior debt that the Bank will begin issuing once the Bail-in Regime goes into effect on September 23, 2018

See Appendix II of the 2017 AIF incorporated by reference into this Prospectus for an explanation of the credit ratings referred to above. Further information may be obtained from the applicable rating agency.

Moody's, S&P, Fitch and DBRS have a stable outlook on the Bank's long-term credit ratings. On August 14, 2018, S&P Canada revised the Bank's issuer rating with regard to subordinated debt, subordinated debt – NVCC, preferred shares and preferred shares – NVCC. On July 16, 2018, Moody's Canada revised the Bank's issuer rating, together with the outlook, with regard to long-term ratings, senior debt ratings, deposit ratings and subordinated debt-NVCC. On April 29, 2018, DBRS revised the outlook on the Bank's long-term issuer ratings, senior debt ratings and deposit ratings to stable from negative. DBRS also downgraded the Bank's legacy subordinated indebtedness by one notch to A (high) from AA (low). These actions result from the publication by the Minster of Finance (Canada) of the final rules related to the Canadian bail-in regime for domestic systemically important banks, which include the Bank. The credit ratings that external rating agencies assign to some of the Bank's securities are important in the raising of both capital and funding to support its business operations. Maintaining strong credit ratings allows the Bank to access the capital markets at competitive pricing levels. Should the Bank's credit ratings experience a downgrade, its cost of funds will likely increase and the Bank's access to funding and capital through capital markets could be reduced. A material downgrade of the Bank's ratings could have other consequences, including those set out in Note 8 of the 2017 Financial Statements and under the heading "Credit Rating" in the Bank's Third Quarter 2018 Report to Shareholders.

Credit ratings are not recommendations to purchase, hold or sell securities and do not address the market price or suitability of a specific security for a particular investor. Credit ratings may not reflect the potential impact of all risks on the value of securities. In addition, real or anticipated changes in the rating assigned to a security will generally affect the market value of that security. The Bank cannot know for certain that a

rating will remain in effect for any given period of time or that a rating agency will not revise or withdraw it entirely in the future.

The Bank paid fees to credit agencies to obtain its credit ratings. The Bank may also pay fees for other services from credit agencies in the ordinary course of business.

Financial Summary

The information in the tables below has been extracted from the 2017 Financial Statements, prepared in accordance with IFRS, which are incorporated herein by reference together with the accompanying notes and auditors' report.

An audit opinion has not been expressed on individual balances of accounts or summaries of selected transactions in the tables below.

Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheet

	As at *October 31, 2017*	As at *October 31, 2016*
	(in millions of Canadian dollars)	
Cash & Cash Equivalents	32,599	31, 653
Interest Bearing Deposits with Banks	6,490	4,449
Securities	163,198	149,985
Securities Borrowed or Purchased under Resale Agreements	75,047	66,646
Loans, net of allowance for credit losses	361,672	358,730
Other Assets	70,574	76,472
Total Assets	709,580	687,935
Deposits	483,488	473,372
Other Liabilities	176,709	167,796
Subordinated Debt	5,029	4,439
Total Equity	44,354	42,328
Total Liabilities and Equity	709,580	687,935

Condensed Consolidated Statement of Income

	Year ended *October 31, 2017*	Year ended *October 31, 2016*
	(in millions of Canadian dollars, except earnings per share amounts)	
Net Interest Income	10,007	9,872
Non-Interest Revenue	12,253	11,215
Total Revenue	22,260	21,087
Provision for Credit Losses	774	815
Insurance Claims, Commissions and Changes in Policy Benefit Liabilities	1,538	1,543
Non-Interest Expense	13,302	12,997
Provision for Income Taxes	1,296	1,101
Net Income	5,350	4,631
Attributable to:		
Bank Shareholders	5,348	4,622
Non-controlling interest in subsidiaries	2	9
Earnings per Share		
- Basic	7.95	6.94
- Diluted	7.92	6.92

Trend Information

Canada's economy has slowed largely due to higher interest rates and policy measures designed to restrain the housing market and household credit growth. Real GDP is expected to grow 2.0 per cent. in 2018 and 1.8 per cent. in 2019, down from 3.0 per cent. in 2017. This moderate pace is still expected to reduce the unemployment rate to a four-decade low of 5.7 per cent. by year-end 2018. Personal consumption growth is expected to slow to 2.0 per cent. this year from 3.5 per cent. last year in response to rising interest rates and elevated household debt, resulting in industry-wide consumer credit growth easing to 4.2 per cent. Growth in residential mortgages is anticipated to moderate to 4.4 per cent. in 2018 in response to higher borrowing costs and stricter mortgage rules. However, the housing market remains active in most regions due to the fastest population growth in a quarter century. Though supported by higher oil prices and rising capacity utilization in the industrial sector, business investment is expected to slow from its current strong pace due to higher interest rates and uncertain North American trade relations, resulting in industry business loan growth decelerating to 6.5 per cent. in 2018 from the double-digit rate prevailing in the previous three years. However, exports are expected to improve in response to a low-valued Canadian dollar and strong U.S. demand this year. After raising policy rates a cumulative 100 basis points since July 2017, the Bank of Canada is projected to increase rates an additional 25 basis points later this year. Canada's economy faces external risks related to the fate of the North American Free Trade Agreement and trade policies. While tariffs by the U.S. government on Canadian steel and aluminum and retaliatory Canadian measures on U.S. goods are expected to have limited effects on the economy, protectionist trade measures currently under consideration by the U.S. government, including on motor vehicles, could have more damaging effects. The U.S. economy has been strong, benefiting from expansionary fiscal policies, tax reform, supportive financial conditions and robust business spending. Real GDP is expected to grow 2.8 per cent. in 2018 and 2.5 per cent. in 2019, up from 2.2 per cent. in 2017. Robust employment growth should reduce the jobless rate to 3.7 per cent. by early next year, the lowest

level since 1969. Consumer spending is anticipated to increase 2.5 per cent. in 2018 amid lower personal taxes, encouraging industry-wide consumer credit growth of 4.0 per cent. Interest-sensitive housing market activity appears to be peaking, suggesting that residential mortgage growth will downshift slightly to 4.1 per cent. this year. Business spending is expected to remain strong, supported by lower corporate taxes and incentives to repatriate foreign earnings, raising business credit demand 6.6 per cent. in 2018. Interest rates are projected to continue to increase, with the Federal Reserve likely to raise policy rates a further 50 basis points in the second half of 2018. The main risks to the U.S. economic outlook relate to trade protectionism, geopolitical tensions and the possibility of higher inflation. The imposed tariffs to-date are expected to slow the economy only modestly, but additional protectionist measures could lead to rising joblessness. The 40 per cent. increase in oil prices in the past year will exert some upward pressure on inflation and also have a dampening effect on the economy. Economic growth in the U.S. Midwest region, which includes the six contiguous states within the BMO footprint, is expected to improve to 1.9 per cent. in 2018 and 1.7 per cent. in 2019 from 1.4 per cent. in 2017 in response to lower federal taxes and increased manufacturing production. However, growth is projected to be below the national rate due to slower population growth and budgetary constraints in Illinois.

Since October 31, 2017, the last day of the financial period in respect of which the most recent audited published consolidated financial statements of the Bank have been prepared, there has been no material adverse change in the prospects of the Bank and its subsidiaries taken as a whole.

Directors

The Directors of the Bank, their function in the Bank and their other principal activities (if any) outside of the Bank of significance to the Bank are as follows:

Name and Municipality of Residence	Principal Activities
Jan M. Babiak Franklin, Tennessee, U.S.A.	Corporate Director
Sophie Brochu Bromont, Québec, Canada	President and Chief Executive Officer, Énergir, a diversified energy company
Craig Broderick Greenwich, Connecticut, U.S.A.	Senior Director Goldman, Sachs & Co., a financial services company
George A. Cope, O.C. Toronto, Ontario, Canada	President and Chief Executive Officer, BCE and Bell Canada, communications companies
Christine A. Edwards Lake Forest, Illinois, U.S.A.	Capital Partner, Winston & Strawn LLP, a law firm
Dr. Martin S. Eichenbaum Glencoe, Illinois, U.S.A	Charles Moskos Professor of Economics, Northwestern University
Ronald H.Farmer Markham, Ontario, Canada	Managing Director, Mosaic Capital Partners, a management and holding company
David Harquail Toronto, Ontario, Canada	Chief Executive Officer, Franco-Nevada Corporation, a royalty and streaming company active in both the mining and oil & gas industries
Linda S. Huber New York, New York, U.S.A.	Corporate Director
Eric R. La Flèche Montreal, Québec, Canada	President and Chief Executive Officer, Metro Inc., a food retailer and distributor
Lorraine Mitchelmore Calgary, Alberta, Canada	Corporate Director
Philip S. Orsino, O.C., F.C.A. Toronto, Ontario, Canada	President and Chief Executive Officer, Brightwaters Strategic Solutions Inc., a consulting and advisory services company
J. Robert S. Prichard, O.C., O. Ont, FRSC Toronto, Ontario, Canada	Chairman of the Board, Bank of Montreal and Non-Executive Chair of Torys LLP, a law firm
Darryl White Toronto, Ontario, Canada	Chief Executive Officer of BMO Financial Group
Don M.Wilson III Greenwich, Connecticut, U.S.A.	Corporate Director

The business address of all of the Directors is the executive offices of the Bank, 100 King Street West, 1 First Canadian Place, 24th Floor, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, M5X 1A1. No directors hold executive positions with the Bank other than as shown above.

As at the date of the Prospectus, there are no potential conflicts of interest between any duties owed to the Bank by the Directors and the private interests and/or other duties owed by these individuals. If a Director had a material interest in a matter being considered by the Board or its Committees, such Director would not participate in any discussions relating to, or any vote on, such matter.

Major Shareholders

To the extent known to the Bank, the Bank is not directly or indirectly owned or controlled by any person.

As mentioned above, the Bank Act prohibits any person from having a "significant interest" in any class of shares of the Bank, that is, from beneficially owning more than 10 per cent. of the outstanding shares of the class either directly or through controlled entities, without the approval of the Minister of Finance of Canada. A person may, with the approval of the Minister of Finance, beneficially own up to 20 per cent. of a class of voting shares and up to 30 per cent. of a class of non-voting shares of the Bank, subject to a "fit and proper" test based on the character and integrity of the applicant. In addition, the holder of such a significant interest could not have "control in fact" of the Bank.

Material Contracts

The Bank and its subsidiaries have not entered into any material contracts outside the ordinary course of the Bank's business which could materially affect the Bank's obligations in respect of any Notes to be issued by the Bank other than, with respect to any Notes, the contracts described in "Subscription and Sale" and in "Terms and Conditions of the Notes".

SUBSCRIPTION AND SALE

The Dealers have, in a Programme Agreement amended and restated as of September 24, 2018 (as further amended from time to time) (the "**Programme Agreement**"), agreed with the Bank a basis upon which they or any of them may from time to time agree to purchase Notes. Any such agreement will extend to those matters stated under "Issue Procedures" and "Terms and Conditions of the Notes" above. In the Programme Agreement, the Bank has agreed to reimburse the Dealers for certain of their expenses in connection with the establishment of the Programme and the issue of Notes under the Programme. The Bank has agreed to indemnify the Dealers against certain liabilities in connection with the offer and sale of the Notes. The Programme Agreement may be terminated in relation to all the Dealers or any of them by the Bank or, in relation to itself and the Bank only, by any Dealer, at any time on giving not less than 30 days' notice. The Programme Agreement also provides that the Bank may sell directly to third parties other than Dealers and that the obligation of any Dealer to subscribe for Notes under any such agreement is subject to certain conditions and that, in certain circumstances, a Dealer shall be entitled to be released and discharged from its obligations under any such agreement prior to the issue of the relevant Notes.

Persons into whose hands this Prospectus or any Final Terms or Drawdown Prospectus comes are required by the Bank, the Arrangers and the Dealers to comply with all applicable laws and regulations in each country or jurisdiction in or from which they purchase, offer, sell or deliver Notes or have in their possession or distribute such offering material, in all cases at their own expense.

The following is a description of the contractual and other restrictions applicable to the Programme:

Canada

The Senior Notes are exempted from the prospectus requirement under the securities laws of any province or territory of Canada. If the applicable Final Terms specify "Canadian Sales Permitted", each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser appointed under the Programme will be required to represent and agree, that it has offered, sold or distributed and that it will offer, sell or distribute any Notes, in Canada in compliance with the securities laws of Canada or any province or territory thereof.

If the applicable Final Terms specify "Canadian Sales not Permitted", each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser appointed under the Programme will be required to represent and agree, that it has not offered, sold or distributed, and that it will not offer, sell or distribute any Notes, directly or indirectly, in Canada or to, or for the benefit of any resident thereof.

Each Dealer has agreed, and each other Purchaser appointed under the Programme will be required to agree, that it will not distribute or deliver this Prospectus, any Drawdown Prospectus or any other offering material relating to the Notes in Canada if the applicable Final Terms specify "Canadian Sales Not Permitted" or, if the applicable Final Terms specify "Canadian Sales Permitted", in contravention of the securities laws of Canada or any province or territory thereof.

United States

Regulation S, Compliance Category 2 will apply and TEFRA D will apply, unless TEFRA C Rules are specified as applicable or TEFRA Rules are specified as not applicable in the relevant Final Terms. The Notes are not eligible under Rule 144A of the *Securities Act of 1933* as amended (the "**Securities Act**").

The Notes have not been and will not be registered under the Securities Act or the securities laws of any state or other jurisdiction of the United States and may not be offered or sold within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, United States persons except in certain transactions exempt from or not

subject to the registration requirements of the Securities Act. Terms used in this paragraph have the meanings given to them by Regulation S under the Securities Act.

Notes in bearer form are subject to United States tax law requirements and may not be offered, sold or delivered within the United States or its possessions or to a United States person, except in certain transactions permitted by United States tax regulations. Terms used in this paragraph have the meanings given to them by the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986 and regulations promulgated thereunder.

Each Purchaser will be required to agree that, except as permitted by the Programme Agreement, it will not offer, sell or deliver the Notes of any identifiable Tranche, (i) as part of their distribution at any time or (ii) otherwise until 40 days after completion of the distribution of such Tranche (as determined, and certified to the Bank, by the Agent, or in the case of Notes issued on a syndicated basis, the Lead Manager(s)) within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, United States persons except in accordance with Regulation S of the Securities Act, it will not engage in any directed selling efforts with respect to the Notes of any Tranche within the United States or to United States persons except in accordance with Regulation S of the Securities Act and it will have sent to each dealer to which it sells Notes during the distribution compliance period a confirmation or other notice setting forth the restrictions on offers and sales of the Notes within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, United States persons.

In addition, until 40 days after the commencement of the offering of the relevant issue of Notes, an offer or sale of Notes within the United States by a dealer that is not participating in the offering may violate the registration requirements of the Securities Act.

Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors

Unless the Final Terms in respect of any Notes specifies the "Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors" as "Not Applicable", each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser appointed under the Programme will be required to represent and agree, that it has not offered, sold or otherwise made available and will not offer, sell or otherwise make available any Notes which are the subject of the offering contemplated by this Prospectus as completed by the Final Terms in relation thereto to any retail investor in the European Economic Area. For the purposes of this provision:

(a) the expression "**retail investor**" means a person who is one (or more) of the following:

  (i) a retail client as defined in point (11) of Article 4(1) of Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended); or

  (ii) a customer within the meaning of Directive 2002/92/EC, as amended, where that customer would not qualify as a professional client as defined in point (10) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or

  (iii) not a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive (as defined below); and

(b) the expression an "**offer**" includes the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the Notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe the Notes.

If the Final Terms in respect of any Notes specifies "Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors" is "Not Applicable" in relation to each Member State of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a "**Relevant Member State**"), each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that with effect from and including the date on which the Prospectus Directive is implemented in that Relevant Member State (the "**Relevant Implementation Date**") it has not made and will not make an offer of Notes which are the subject of the

offering contemplated by this Prospectus as completed by the applicable Final Terms in relation thereto to the public in that Relevant Member State except that it may, with effect from and including the Relevant Implementation Date, make an offer of such Notes to the public in that Relevant Member State:

(a) at any time to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;

(b) at any time to fewer than 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors, as defined in the Prospectus Directive) subject to obtaining the prior consent of the relevant Purchaser or Purchasers nominated by the Bank for any such offer; or

(c) at any time in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive;

provided that no such offer of Notes referred to in (a) to (c) above shall require the Bank or any Purchaser to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression an "**offer of Notes to the public**" in relation to any Notes in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the Notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe the Notes, as the same may be varied in that Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Member State and the expression "**Prospectus Directive**" means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU, or superseded), and includes any relevant implementing measures in the Relevant Member State.

United Kingdom

Each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that:

(i) it has only communicated or caused to be communicated and will only communicate or cause to be communicated an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity (within the meaning of Section 21 of the FSMA) received by it in connection with the issue or sale of any Notes in circumstances in which Section 21(1) of the FSMA would not, if the Bank was not an authorised person, apply to the Bank; and

(ii) it has complied and will comply with all applicable provisions of the FSMA with respect to anything done by it in relation to any Notes in, from or otherwise involving the United Kingdom.

Belgium

Other than in respect of Notes for which "Prohibition of Sales to Belgian Consumers" is specified as "Not Applicable" in the applicable Final Terms, each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each further Dealer appointed under the Programme will be required to represent and agree, that an offering of Notes may not be advertised to any individual in Belgium qualifying as a consumer within the meaning of Article I.1 of the Belgian Code of Economic Law, as amended from time to time (a "**Belgian Consumer**"), and that it has not offered, sold or resold, transferred or delivered, and will not offer, sell, resell, transfer or deliver, the Notes, and that it has not distributed, and will not distribute, any prospectus, memorandum, information circular, brochure or any similar documents in relation to the Notes, directly or indirectly, to any Belgian Consumer.

France

This Prospectus has not been submitted for clearance to the *Autorité des marchés financiers* in France.

Each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that it has not offered or sold and will not offer or sell, directly or indirectly, Notes to the public in France, and has not distributed or caused to be distributed and will not distribute or cause to be distributed to the public in France, the Prospectus, the applicable Final Terms or any other offering material relating to the Notes, and that such offers, sales and distributions have been and shall be made in France only to (i) providers of investment services relating to portfolio management for the account of third parties, and/or (ii) qualified investors *(investisseurs qualifiés)*, all defined in, and in accordance with, articles L.411-1, L.411-2 and D.411-1 of the French *Code monétaire et financier*.

Republic of Italy

The offering of any Notes has not been registered with the *Commissione Nazionale per le Società e la Borsa* ("**CONSOB**") pursuant to Italian securities legislation and, accordingly, each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that it has not offered, sold or delivered, and will not offer, sell or deliver, any Notes in the Republic of Italy ("**Italy**") in a solicitation to the public, and that sales of the Notes in Italy shall be effected in accordance with all Italian securities, tax and exchange control and other applicable laws and regulations.

Each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that it will not offer, sell or deliver any Notes or distribute copies of the Prospectus or any other document relating to the Notes in Italy except:

(a) to "**qualified investors**" (*investitori qualificati*), as defined pursuant to Article 100 of Legislative Decree No. 58 of 24 February 1998, as amended ("**Financial Services Act**") and Article 34-*ter*, first paragraph, letter b) of CONSOB Regulation No. 11971 of 14 May 1999, as amended ("**Regulation No. 11971**"); or

(b) in any other circumstances which are exempted from the rules on public offerings pursuant to Article 100 of the Financial Services Act and Article 34-*ter* of Regulation No. 11971.

Any offer, sale or delivery of any Notes or distribution of copies of the Prospectus and any supplement thereto or any other document relating to the Notes in Italy must:

(i) be made by an investment firm, bank or financial intermediary permitted to conduct such activities in Italy in accordance with the Financial Services Act, CONSOB Regulation No. 20307 of 15 February 2018 (as amended from time to time) and Legislative Decree No. 385 of 1 September 1993, as amended (the "**Banking Act**"); and

(ii) comply with any other applicable laws and regulations or requirement imposed by CONSOB, the Bank of Italy (including the reporting requirements, where applicable, pursuant to Article 129 of the Banking Act and the implementing guidelines of the Bank of Italy, as amended from time to time) and/or other Italian authority.

Please note that in accordance with Article 100-bis of the Consolidated Financial Services Act, where no exemption from the rules on public offerings applies under (a) and (b) above, the subsequent distribution of the Notes on the secondary market in Italy must be made in compliance with the public offer and the prospectus requirement rules provided under the Consolidated Financial Services Act and CONSOB Regulation No. 11971. Failure to comply with such rules may result in the sale of such Notes being declared null and void and in the liability of the intermediary transferring the financial instruments for any damages suffered by the investors.

The Netherlands

Each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that it has not, directly or indirectly, offered or sold, and will not, directly or indirectly, offer or sell the Notes in The Netherlands, other than to qualified investors, as defined in article 1.1 of the Dutch Financial Supervision Act (*Wet op het financieel toezicht*), unless such offer is made in accordance with such Act.

Japan

No registration pursuant to article 4, paragraph 1 of the Financial Instruments and Exchange Act of Japan (Law No. 25 of 1948, as amended) (the "**FIEA**") has been made or will be made with respect to the Notes. Accordingly, each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that it will not offer or sell any Notes, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan (as defined under Item 5, Paragraph 1, Article 6 of the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Law (Law No. 228 of 1949, as amended)), or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, a resident of Japan except pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of, and otherwise in compliance with, the FIEA and any other applicable laws, regulations and ministerial guidelines of Japan.

Each Purchaser will be required to provide to the Bank any necessary information relating to Yen Notes (which should not include names of clients) so that the Bank or its designated agent may make any required reports to the Ministry of Finance of Japan.

Hong Kong

Each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that:

(a) it has not offered or sold, and will not offer or sell, in Hong Kong, by means of any document, any Notes (except for Notes which are a "structured product" as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571) of Hong Kong (the "**SFO**")) other than (i) to persons whose ordinary business is to buy or sell shares or debentures (whether as principal or agent); or (ii) to "professional investors" within the meaning of the SFO and any rules made under the SFO; or (iii) in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a "prospectus" as defined in the Companies (Winding Up and Miscellaneous Provisions) Ordinance (Cap. 32) of Hong Kong (the "**C(WUMP)O)**") or which do not constitute an offer to the public within the meaning of the C(WUMP)O); and

(b) it has not issued, or had in its possession for the purposes of issue, and will not issue or have in its possession for the purposes of issue, whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere, any advertisement, invitation or document relating to the Notes, which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public of Hong Kong (except if permitted to do so under the securities laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to Notes which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to "professional investors" as defined in the SFO and any rules made thereunder.

The People's Republic of China

Each Dealer has represented, warranted and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent, warrant and agree, that the Notes are not being offered or sold and may not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, in PRC (for such purpose, not including the Hong Kong, Macau and Taiwan), except as permitted by the laws of PRC.

Singapore

Each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that this Prospectus has not been registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, each Dealer has represented and agreed and each other Purchaser will be required to represent and agree, that it has not offered or sold any Notes or caused the Notes to be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase and will not offer or sell any Notes or cause the Notes to be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, and has not circulated or distributed, nor will it circulate or distribute, this Prospectus or any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the Notes, whether directly or indirectly, to any person in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA) pursuant to Section 274 of the SFA, (ii) to a relevant person (as defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA) pursuant to Section 275(1) of the SFA, or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A) of the SFA, and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275 of the SFA, or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA.

Where the Notes are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is:

(a) a corporation (which is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor; or

(b) a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary of the trust is an individual who is an accredited investor,

securities (as defined in Section 239(1) of the SFA) of that corporation or the beneficiaries' rights and interest (however described) in that trust shall not be transferable for six months after that corporation or that trust has acquired the Notes pursuant to an offer under Section 275 of the SFA except:

(1) to an institutional investor or to a relevant person defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA, or to any person arising from an offer referred to in Section 275(1A) or Section 276(4)(i)(B) of the SFA; or

(2) where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer; or

(3) where the transfer is by operation of law; or

(4) pursuant to Section 276(7) of the Securities and Futures Act; or

(5) as specified in Regulation 32 of the Securities and Futures (Offer of Investments) (Shares and Debentures) Regulations 2005 of Singapore.

Unless otherwise stated in the Final Terms in respect of any Notes, all Notes issued or to be issued under the Programme shall be prescribed capital markets products (as defined in the Securities and Futures (Capital Markets Products) Regulations 2018) and Excluded Investment Products (as defined in MAS Notice SFA 04-N12: Notice on the Sale of Investment Products and MAS Notice FAA-N16: Notice on Recommendations on Investment Products).

Taiwan

Each Dealer has agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to agree, that the offering of the Notes has not been and will not be registered with the Financial Supervisory Commission of Taiwan pursuant to relevant securities laws and regulations and may not be offered or sold in Taiwan through a public offering or in circumstances which constitute an offer within the meaning of the Securities and Exchange Act of Taiwan that requires registration with or approval of the Financial Supervisory Commission of Taiwan. Each Dealer has agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to agree, that no person or entity in Taiwan has been authorized to offer or sell the Notes in Taiwan.

General

Each Dealer has agreed, and each other Purchaser will be required to agree that it will comply, to the best of its knowledge, in good faith and on reasonable grounds after making all reasonable investigation, with all applicable securities laws and regulations in force in any jurisdiction in which it purchases, offers, sells or delivers Notes or possesses or distributes the Prospectus, any Final Terms or any other offering material and will obtain any consent, approval or permission required by it for the purchase, offer, sale or delivery by it of Notes under the laws and regulations in force in any jurisdiction to which it is subject or in which it makes such purchases, offers, sales or deliveries and neither the Bank nor any other Purchaser shall have any responsibility therefor. No action has been taken in any jurisdiction that would permit a public offering of any of the Notes, or possession or distribution of the Prospectus or any Final Terms, in any country or jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required.

The Programme Agreement provides that without prejudice to the obligations of the Dealers described in the paragraph of this "General" section, Dealers shall not be bound by any of the restrictions relating to any specific jurisdiction (set out above) to the extent that such restrictions shall, as a result of changes in, or a change in the interpretation of, the relevant law, regulation or directive after the date hereof no longer be applicable. Any such modification may be set out in a supplement to this Prospectus or a Drawdown Prospectus, if appropriate.

Neither the Bank nor any of the Purchasers represents that Notes may at any time lawfully be sold in compliance with any applicable registration or other requirements in any jurisdiction, or pursuant to any exemption available thereunder, or assumes any responsibility for facilitating such sale.

TAXATION

Canada

The following summary describes the principal Canadian federal income tax considerations generally applicable to a holder of Notes who acquires, as beneficial owner, Notes pursuant to this Prospectus or common shares of the Bank or any affiliate of the Bank on a Bail-in Conversion ("**Common Shares**"), and who, at all relevant times, for the purposes of the *Income Tax Act* (Canada) and the regulations thereunder (collectively the "**Act**") and any applicable income tax convention, (i) is not resident and is not deemed to be resident in Canada, (ii) deals at arm's length with the Bank, any issuer of Common Shares, and with any Canadian resident (or deemed Canadian resident) to whom the holder disposes of Notes, (iii) is not a "specified non-resident shareholder" of the Bank for purposes of subsection 18(5) of the Act or a non-resident person not dealing at arm's length with a "specified shareholder" of the Bank for purposes of subsection 18(5) of the Act, (iv) does not use or hold Notes or Common Shares in or in the course of a business carried on or deemed to be carried on in Canada, (v) is entitled to receive all payments made in respect of the Notes and (vi) is not an insurer that carries on an insurance business in Canada and elsewhere (a "**Non-resident Holder**").

This summary is based upon the provisions of the Act in force on the date hereof and an understanding of the current administrative policies and assessing practices of the Canada Revenue Agency published in writing prior to the date hereof. This summary takes into account all specific proposals to amend the Act publicly announced by or on behalf of the Minister of Finance (Canada) prior to the date hereof (the "**Proposed Amendments**") and assumes that all Proposed Amendments will be enacted in the form proposed. However, no assurances can be given that the Proposed Amendments will be enacted as proposed, or at all. This summary does not otherwise take into account or anticipate any changes in law or administrative policy or assessing practice, whether by legislative, regulatory, administrative or judicial action, nor does it take into account provincial, territorial or foreign income tax legislation, which may differ from those discussed herein. Subsequent developments could have a material effect on the following description. This summary assumes that no interest paid on the Notes will be in respect of a debt or other obligation to pay an amount to a person with whom the Bank does not deal at arm's length, within the meaning of the Act.

This summary is of a general nature only and is not exhaustive of all Canadian federal income tax considerations. It is not intended to be legal or tax advice to any particular holder, or in respect of any particular issuance of Notes, the terms and conditions of which will be material to the Canadian federal income tax considerations with respect thereto. The Canadian federal income tax considerations may be supplemented, amended and/or replaced in a Pricing Supplement, Final Terms, Drawdown Prospectus or a supplemental prospectus, based on the terms and conditions of the Notes issued pursuant to such Pricing Supplement, Final Terms, Drawdown Prospectus or supplemental prospectus, as the case may be. Accordingly, prospective purchasers of Notes should consult their own tax advisors with respect to their particular circumstances, and in any event where Notes are otherwise issued without disclosure of Canadian federal income tax considerations.

For purposes of the Act, all amounts not otherwise expressed in Canadian dollars must be converted into Canadian dollars based on the single day exchange rate quoted by the Bank of Canada or such other rate that is acceptable to the Minister of National Revenue (Canada).

Interest paid or credited or deemed for purposes of the Act to be paid or credited on a Note (including amounts on account or in lieu of payment of, or in satisfaction of, interest) to a Non-resident Holder will not be subject to Canadian non-resident withholding tax, unless any portion of such interest (other than on a "prescribed obligation" described below) is contingent or dependent on the use of or production from property in Canada or is computed by reference to revenue, profit, cash flow, commodity price or any other similar criterion or by reference to dividends paid or payable to shareholders of any class or series of shares of the capital stock of a corporation ("**Participating Debt Interest**"). A "prescribed obligation" is a debt obligation the terms or conditions of which provide for an adjustment to an amount payable in respect of the obligation for a period during which the obligation was outstanding which adjustment is determined by reference to a change in the purchasing power of money and no amount payable in respect thereof, other than an amount determined by reference to a change in the purchasing power of money, is contingent or dependent on the use of or production from property in Canada or is computed by reference to any of the criteria described in the definition of Participating Debt Interest. If any interest payable on a Note, or any portion of the principal amount of a Note in excess of its issue price, is to be calculated by reference to an index or formula, interest on the Note, together with any such portion of such principal, may be subject to Canadian non-resident withholding tax.

In the event that a Note which is not exempt from Canadian withholding tax under its terms is redeemed, cancelled, repurchased or purchased by the Bank or any other person resident or deemed to be resident in Canada from a Non-resident Holder or is otherwise assigned or transferred by a Non-resident Holder to a person resident or deemed to be resident in Canada for an amount which exceeds, generally, the issue price thereof, the excess may be deemed to be interest and may, together with any interest that has accrued on the Note to that time, be subject to non-resident withholding tax. Such excess will not be subject to withholding tax if, in certain circumstances, the Note is considered an "excluded obligation" for purposes of the Act. A Note will be an excluded obligation for this purpose if it is not an "indexed debt obligation" (defined below) and it was issued for an amount not less than 97 per cent. of the principal amount (as defined for the purposes of the Act) of the Note, and the yield from which, expressed in terms of an annual rate (determined in accordance with the Act) on the amount for which the Note was issued does not exceed 4/3 of the interest stipulated to be payable on the Note, expressed in terms of an annual rate on the outstanding principal amount from time to time. An "**indexed debt obligation**" is a debt obligation the terms or conditions of which provide for an adjustment to an amount payable in respect of the obligation for a period during which the obligation was outstanding that is determined by reference to a change in the purchasing power of money.

Generally, there are no other taxes on income (including taxable capital gains) payable by a Non-resident Holder on any interest, discount, or premium in respect of a Note or on the proceeds received by a Non-resident Holder on the disposition of a Note (including redemption, payment on maturity, Bail-in Conversion, cancellation, purchase or repurchase).

Dividends paid or credited, or deemed under the Tax Act to be paid or credited, on Common Shares of the Bank or of any affiliate of the Bank that is a Canadian resident corporation to a Non-resident Holder will generally be subject to Canadian non-resident withholding tax at the rate of 25 per cent. on the gross amount of such dividends unless the rate is reduced under the provisions of an applicable income tax treaty or convention between Canada and the country of residence of the Non-resident Holder.

A Non-resident Holder will not be subject to tax under the Tax Act in respect of any capital gain realized on a disposition or deemed disposition of a Common Share unless the Common Share is or is deemed to be "taxable Canadian property" of the Non-resident Holder for the purposes of the Tax Act and the Non-resident Holder is not entitled to an exemption under an applicable income tax convention between Canada and the country in which the Non-resident Holder is resident.

United Kingdom

The comments below are of a general nature and are based on the Bank's understanding of current United Kingdom tax law (as applied in England and Wales) and published HM Revenue and Customs' practice relating to certain aspects of United Kingdom taxation. They only describe the United Kingdom tax treatment in respect of the deduction of United Kingdom tax from interest (as that term is understood for United Kingdom tax purposes) on Notes and relate only to the position of persons who are the absolute beneficial owners of their Notes and Coupons and may not apply to certain classes of persons such as dealers. It does not deal with any other United Kingdom taxation implications of acquiring, holding or disposing of Notes. The United Kingdom tax treatment of prospective Noteholders depends on their individual circumstances and may be subject to change in the future. Prospective Noteholders who are in any doubt as to their own tax position or who may be subject to tax in a jurisdiction other than the United Kingdom should consult their professional advisers.

Notes issued where the Branch of Account is not the Bank's London branch

Payments of interest on the Notes may be made without withholding or deduction on account of United Kingdom income tax provided the payments of interest on the Notes does not have a United Kingdom source.

If interest paid on the Notes does have a United Kingdom source then payments of interest on the Notes may also be made without withholding or deduction on account of United Kingdom income tax in the circumstances set out below under the heading "Notes issued where the Branch of Account is the Bank's London branch".

Notes issued where the Branch of Account is the Bank's London branch

The Bank, provided that it is and continues to be a bank within the meaning of section 991 of the *Income Tax Act 2007* (the "**Act**"), and provided that the interest on the Notes is and continues to be paid in the ordinary course of its business within the meaning of section 878 of the Act, will be entitled to make payments of interest without withholding or deduction for or on account of United Kingdom income tax.

Payments of interest on the Notes may also be made without deduction of or withholding on account of United Kingdom income tax provided that the Notes carry a right to interest and the Notes are and continue to be listed on a "recognised stock exchange", within the meaning of section 1005 of the Act. The London Stock Exchange is a recognised stock exchange. Securities will be treated as listed on the London Stock Exchange if they are included in the Official List (within the meaning of and in accordance with the provisions of Part VI of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) and admitted to trading on the London Stock Exchange. Provided, therefore, that the Notes carry a right to interest and are and remain so listed on a "recognised stock exchange", interest on the Notes will be payable without withholding or deduction on account of United Kingdom tax whether or not the Bank carries on a banking business in the United Kingdom and whether or not the interest is paid in the ordinary course of its business.

Interest on the Notes may also be paid without withholding or deduction on account of United Kingdom income tax where the maturity of the Notes is less than 365 days and those Notes do not form part of a scheme or arrangement of borrowing intended to be capable of remaining outstanding for more than 364 days.

In other cases, an amount must generally be withheld from payments of interest on the Notes that has a United Kingdom source on account of United Kingdom income tax at the basic rate (currently 20 per cent.), subject to any other available exemptions and reliefs. However, where an applicable double tax treaty provides for a lower rate of withholding tax (or for no tax to be withheld) in relation to a Noteholder, HM

Revenue & Customs can issue a notice to the Bank following the making of a claim by the Noteholder to pay interest to the Noteholder without deduction of tax (or for interest to be paid with tax deducted at the rate provided for in the relevant double tax treaty).

United States Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act

Pursuant to certain provisions of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, commonly known as FATCA, a "foreign financial institution" may be required to withhold on certain payments it makes ("**foreign passthru payments**") to persons that fail to meet certain certification, reporting, or related requirements. The Bank is a foreign financial institution for these purposes. A number of jurisdictions (including Canada and the United Kingdom) have entered into, or have agreed in substance to, intergovernmental agreements with the United States to implement FATCA ("**IGAs**"), which modify the way in which FATCA applies in their jurisdictions. Under the provisions of IGAs as currently in effect, a foreign financial institution in an IGA jurisdiction that complies with such IGA would generally not be required to withhold under FATCA or an IGA from payments that it makes. Certain aspects of the application of the FATCA provisions and IGAs to instruments such as the Notes, including whether withholding would ever be required pursuant to FATCA or an IGA with respect to payments on instruments such as the Notes, are uncertain and may be subject to change. Even if withholding would be required pursuant to FATCA or an IGA with respect to payments on instruments such as the Notes, such withholding would not apply prior to 1 January 2019 and Notes characterised as debt (or which are not otherwise characterised as equity and have a fixed term) for U.S. federal tax purposes that are issued on or prior to the date that is six months after the date on which final regulations defining "foreign passthru payments" are filed with the U.S. Federal Register generally would be "grandfathered" for purposes of FATCA withholding unless materially modified after such date. However, if additional notes (as described under "Terms and Conditions of the Notes - Further Issues") that are not distinguishable from previously issued Notes are issued after the expiration of the grandfathering period and are subject to withholding under FATCA, then withholding agents may treat all Notes, including the Notes offered prior to the expiration of the grandfathering period, as subject to withholding under FATCA. Noteholders should consult their own tax advisors regarding how these rules may apply to their investment in the Notes.

The Proposed Financial Transactions Tax

On February 14, 2013, the European Commission published a proposal (the "**Commission's Proposal**") for a Directive for a common financial transactions tax ("**FTT**") in Belgium, Germany, Estonia, Greece, Spain, France, Italy, Austria, Portugal, Slovenia and Slovakia (the "**participating Member States**"). However, Estonia has since stated that it will not participate.

The Commission's Proposal has very broad scope and could, if introduced, apply to certain dealings in Notes (including secondary market transactions) in certain circumstances. Primary market transactions referred to in Article 5(c) of Regulation (EC) No 1287/2006 are expected to be exempt.

Under the Commission's Proposal the FTT could apply in certain circumstances to persons both within and outside of the participating Member States. Generally, it would apply to certain dealings in Notes where at least one party is a financial institution, and at least one party is established in a participating Member State. A financial institution may be, or be deemed to be, "established" in a participating Member State in a broad range of circumstances, including (a) by transacting with a person established in a participating Member State or (b) where the financial instrument which is subject to the dealings is issued in a participating Member State.

However, the FTT proposal remains subject to negotiation between participating Member States. It may therefore be altered prior to any implementation, the timing of which remains unclear. Additional EU Member States may decide to participate.

Prospective holders of Notes are advised to seek their own professional advice in relation to the FTT.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Authorisation

The Bank has obtained all necessary consents, approvals and authorisations for the establishment of the Programme and for the Bank to undertake and perform its obligations under the Programme Agreement and the Agency Agreement. The issue and sale of notes and securities contemplated hereunder are subject to approval by the Board of Directors or authorized officers of the Bank.

Clearing Systems

The Notes have been accepted for clearance through the Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg systems. The appropriate codes which will include the ISIN for each Tranche allocated by Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg or any other agreed clearing system (including SIX SIS AG) will be contained in the applicable Final Terms. Transactions will normally be effected for settlement not earlier than three days after the date of the transaction. The address of Euroclear is 1 Boulevard du Roi Albert II, B.1210, Brussels, Belgium and the address of Clearstream, Luxembourg is 42 Avenue J.F. Kennedy, L-1855 Luxembourg.

No Significant Change

There has been no significant change in the financial position of the Bank and its subsidiaries taken as a whole since July 31, 2018, the last day of the financial period in respect of which the most recent unaudited published interim consolidated financial statements of the Bank have been prepared.

Legal and Arbitration Proceedings

As disclosed in Note 25 on page 194 of the 2017 Financial Statements, BMO Nesbitt Burns Inc., an indirect subsidiary of the Bank, has been named as a defendant in several individual actions and proposed class actions in Canada and the United States brought on behalf of shareholders of Bre-X Minerals Ltd. Many of the actions have been resolved as to BMO Nesbitt Burns Inc., including two during the year ended October 31, 2010. Management of the Bank believes that there are strong defences to the remaining claims and will vigorously defend them.

Save as disclosed in the preceding paragraph under this section headed “Legal and Arbitration Proceedings”, there are no, nor have there been any governmental, legal or arbitration proceedings involving the Bank or any of its subsidiaries (including any such proceedings which are pending or threatened of which the Bank is aware) which may have, or have had during the 12 months prior to the date of this Prospectus, individually or in the aggregate, a significant effect on the financial position or profitability of the Bank or the Bank and its subsidiaries taken as a whole. The Bank and its subsidiaries are party to other legal proceedings, including regulatory investigations, in the ordinary course of their businesses. While there is inherent difficulty in predicting the outcome of these proceedings, management does not expect the outcome of any of these other proceedings, individually or in the aggregate, to have a significant effect on the consolidated financial position or profitability of the Bank.

Auditors

The consolidated financial statements of the Bank as at and for the year ended October 31, 2017, prepared in accordance with IFRS, were audited in accordance with Canadian generally accepted auditing standards and the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) by KPMG LLP, Chartered Professional Accountants, Licensed Public Accountants who expressed an unqualified opinion

thereon in their report dated December 5, 2017. The address of KPMG LLP is set out on the last page hereof. KPMG LLP is independent with respect to the Bank (and its related entities) and has no material interest in the Bank. KPMG LLP is on the register of third country audit entities kept by the United Kingdom Financial Reporting Council in accordance with the European Union Commission Decision of January 29, 2011 (Decision 2011/30/EU).

Documents Available for Inspection

For the period of 12 months following the date of this Prospectus:

(i) the Bank Act (being the charter of the Bank) and the by-laws of the Bank;

(ii) the Bank's audited annual comparative consolidated financial statements and the auditors' reports thereon for the two most recently completed fiscal years;

(iii) the most recent quarterly report including the unaudited interim consolidated financial statements;

(iv) this Prospectus and any supplements thereto (including the Final Terms for issues of listed Notes);

(v) any Drawdown Prospectus and any documents incorporated by reference therein (if any); and

(vi) the Agency Agreement (incorporating the forms of the temporary global, permanent global and Definitive Notes);

(or copies thereof) will be available for inspection during normal business hours and upon reasonable notice at the specified office of the Agent in London, England and may be obtained from the Treasury Department of the Bank, 100 King Street West, 1 First Canadian Place, 10th Floor, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, M5X 1A1.

Listing of Notes on the Official List

The Listing of Notes on the Official List will be expressed as a percentage of their nominal amount (excluding accrued interest). Any Tranche of Notes which is to be listed on the Official List and to trading on the Market or the PSM will be admitted separately upon submission of the applicable Final Terms, subject to the issue of the relevant Global Note representing the Notes of that Tranche. The listing of the Programme in respect of such Notes is expected to be granted on or around September 27, 2018.

Issue Price and Yield

The price and amount of Notes to be issued under the Programme will be determined by the Bank and the relevant Purchaser at the time of issue in accordance with prevailing market conditions.

The yield of each Tranche will be calculated on an annual or semi-annual basis using the relevant issue price at the relevant issue date. It is not an indication of future yield.

Post-issuance Information

The Bank does not intend to provide any post-issuance information in relation to any issue of Notes.

Legal Entity Identifer (LEI)

The Legal Entity Identifier (LEI) of the Bank is NQQ6HPCNCCU6TUTQYE16.

BANK OF MONTREAL

HEAD OFFICE
129 rue Saint-Jacques
Montréal, Québec
Canada H2Y 1L6

EXECUTIVE OFFICES
100 King Street West
1 First Canadian Place
24th Floor
Toronto, Ontario
Canada M5X 1A1

DEALERS

Bank of Montreal, London Branch
95 Queen Victoria Street
London EC4V 4HG
United Kingdom

Barclays Bank PLC
5 The North Colonnade
Canary Wharf
London E14 4BB
United Kingdom

BMO Capital Markets Limited
95 Queen Victoria Street
London EC4V 4HG
United Kingdom

BNP Paribas
10 Harewood Avenue
London NW1 6AA
United Kingdom

Citigroup Global Markets Limited
Citigroup Centre
Canada Square
Canary Wharf
London E14 5LB
United Kingdom

Commerzbank Aktiengellschaft
Kaiserstraße 16 (Kaiserplatz)
60311 Frankfurt am Main
Federal Republic of Germany

Crédit Agricole Corporate and Investment Bank
12, place des Etats-Unis
CS 70052
92547 Montrouge Cedex
France

Credit Suisse Securities (Europe) Limited
One Cabot Square
London E14 4QJ
United Kingdom

Goldman Sachs International
Peterborough Court
133 Fleet Street
London EC4A 2BB
United Kingdom

HSBC Bank plc
8 Canada Square
London E14 5HQ
United Kingdom

Lloyds Bank Corporate Markets plc
10 Gresham Street
London EC2V 7AE
United Kingdom

J.P. Morgan Securities plc
25 Bank Street
Canary Wharf
London E14 5JP
United Kingdom

Morgan Stanley & Co. International plc
25 Cabot Square
Canary Wharf
London E14 4QA
United Kingdom

Société Générale
29, boulevard Haussmann
75009 Paris
France

UBS Limited
5 Broadgate
London EC2M 2QS
United Kingdom

ISSUING AND PRINCIPAL PAYING AGENT

HSBC Bank plc
8 Canada Square
London E14 5HQ
United Kingdom

PAYING AGENT

Banque Internationale à Luxembourg, société anonyme
69 route d'Esch
L-2953 Luxembourg
Grand Duchy of Luxembourg

LEGAL ADVISERS

To the Bank
Osler, Hoskin & Harcourt LLP
PO Box 50
1 First Canadian Place
Toronto, Ontario
Canada M5X 1B8

Allen & Overy LLP
One Bishops Square
London E1 6AD
United Kingdom

To the Dealers
Norton Rose Fulbright LLP
3 More London Riverside
London SE1 2AQ
United Kingdom

Norton Rose Fulbright Canada LLP
Suite 3800
200 Bay Street
Toronto, Ontario
Canada M5J 2Z4

AUDITORS

KPMG LLP
Suite 4600
Bay Adelaide Centre
333 Bay Street
Toronto, Ontario
Canada M5H 2S5

ARRANGERS

Bank of Montreal, London Branch
95 Queen Victoria Street
London EC4V 4HG
United Kingdom

Barclays Bank PLC
5 The North Colonnade
Canary Wharf
London E14 4BB
United Kingdom